

LIVING LANGUAGE® 



# TAGALOG

A COMPLETE COURSE  
FOR BEGINNERS

Learn to speak, understand, read, and write  
Tagalog with confidence

Living Language® presents a simple and effective introduction to Tagalog, providing you with everything you need to speak, understand, read, and write Tagalog. You don't need any background in the language—each new concept is explained clearly with plenty of examples, making this course ideal for beginners or anyone who wants a thorough review.

**READ** – Natural dialogues, clear grammar notes, essential vocabulary, and key phrases

**LISTEN** – Two sets of recordings on six audio CDs for use with the book or on the go

**PRACTICE** – Plenty of exercises, both written and recorded

**EXPLORE** – Real-life discovery activities, internet resources, notes on culture, cuisine, history, and more

**EXPAND** – A useful pronunciation guide and an extensive two-way glossary

### Why Choose Living Language®?

- The Living Language® method is proven and simple.
- There are no phony gimmicks or fad techniques.
- Millions have learned a new language with Living Language® since 1946.

Design by Chie Ushio

Photo © Paul A. Souders/Corbis

Living Language, A Random House Company, New York, New York

© 2007 by Living Language

[www.livinglanguage.com](http://www.livinglanguage.com)



# **TAGALOG**

**A COMPLETE COURSE  
FOR BEGINNERS**

**written by**

Angelo Castillo de Valerio

**edited by**

Suzanne McQuade

and

Michelle Dionisio

Copyright © 2007 by Living Language, an imprint of Random House, Inc.  
Living Language is a member of the Random House Information Group  
Living Language and colophon are registered trademarks of Random House, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Published in the United States by Living Language, an imprint of Random House, Inc.

[www.livinglanguage.com](http://www.livinglanguage.com)

Editor: Suzanne McQuade

Production Editor: Lisbeth Dyer

Production Manager: Thomas Marshall

Interior Design: Sophie Ye Chin

First Edition

ISBN: 978-1-4000-2349-3

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data available upon request.

This book is available at special discounts for bulk purchases for sales promotions or premiums. Special editions, including personalized covers, excerpts of existing books, and corporate imprints, can be created in large quantities for special needs. For more information, write to Special Markets/Premium Sales, 1745 Broadway, MD 6-2, New York, New York 10019 or e-mail [specialmarkets@randomhouse.com](mailto:specialmarkets@randomhouse.com).

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# Course Outline

List of Abbreviations	xi
Introduction	xiii
Tagalog Alphabet and Pronunciation	xvii

## VOCABULARY

## GRAMMAR

### LESSON 1 GOOD MORNING!

1

Saying Hello and Good-bye

ANG/Subject Pronouns

Basic Word Order and Expressing  
“to Be”

The Markers *Ang* and *Si*

### LESSON 2 WHERE ARE YOU GOING?

13

Informal Expressions for Hello  
and Good-bye

Expressing Possession with  
NG Pronouns

Expressing “to Have” and  
“There Is/There Are”

Forming Questions with  
Question Words

The Marker *Sa* and SA Pronouns

### LESSON 3 MY FAMILY

25

Talking about Your Family

Plural Markers *Mga* and *Sina*

Adjectives

Using Numbers 1–20

Linkers with Adjectives, Numbers,  
and SA Pronouns

Determining Location with  
*Nasaan* and *Nasa*

### LESSON 4 COME IN!

39

Hospitality Expressions

Expressing “to Like” or “to Want”

The Grammatical Markers  
*Ng* and *Ni*

Sentence Structure and Verb Roots

The Infinitive of *-um-* Verbs

**LESSON 5 IT'S LATE!**

53

Daily Routine

The Incompleted (Present) and Contemplated (Future) Aspect of *-um-* Verbs*Mag-* Verbs

Telling Time

**LESSON 6 LET'S STUDY!**

65

School Terms

*Ma-* Verbs

Expressing "to Know"

More on Expressing Sentences in the Negative

**LESSON 7 CAN I ASK A QUESTION?**

75

Asking and Giving Directions

Verbal Focus

Expressing "to Be Able to"

Formulating Questions with *Ba***LESSON 8 IS MR. PANGANIBAN THERE?**

87

Phone-Related Expressions

More On Expressing Ability:  
*Maka-* Affixation

Expressing Need

Command Form with *Paki*Linking Phrases with  
Conjunctions**LESSON 9 HOW MUCH IS THIS?**

97

Shopping Expressions

Demonstrative Pronouns

Comparatives

Theme, Beneficiary, and Location-Focused Verbs

Numbers above 20

**LESSON 10 WHAT'S GOOD HERE?**

109

Restaurant and Food Expressions

Using Inflection with Theme Focus

Modifying Nouns: A Review

Modifying Nouns with Whole Phrases

**LESSON 11 IT'S PAINFUL!**

121

The Body and Health

Expressing "to Happen"

*Magka-* AffixThe Affixes *Ma-/an*

Negative Commands

**LESSON 12 WHERE CAN I . . . ?**

133

Asking for Help and Running Errands

The *Magpa-* Verb Affix

Expressing Obligation

Markers *Na* and *Pa***LESSON 13 WHAT DO YOU PLAN TO DO?**

143

Pastimes, Activities, Plans, Suggestions

Exhortations

Expressing Uncertainty

Recent Perfective

Expressing "Before" and "After"

**LESSON 14 ARE YOU NEW HERE?**

153

Work-Related Expressions

Expressing "to Know" or "to Meet" Someone

Expressing Joint and Reciprocal Actions

Forming Nouns from Root Words

Using Verbs as Nouns

**LESSON 15 VACATION!**

165

Talking about Vacation, Weather, and Time

Describing Weather and Natural Phenomena

Markers *Pala* and *Nga*Markers *Daw* and *Naman*

Expressing Hope

Narrating the Past

Common Verb Roots and Their Infinitives 177

Glossary 181

## List of Abbreviations

---

<i>n.</i>	<b>noun</b>
<i>adj.</i>	<b>adjective</b>
<i>pron.</i>	<b>pronoun</b>
<i>infml.</i>	<b>informal</b>
<i>fml.</i>	<b>formal</b>
<i>excl.</i>	<b>exclusive</b>
<i>incl.</i>	<b>inclusive</b>
<i>v.</i>	<b>verb</b>

# Introduction

---

So you've decided to learn Tagalog. Congratulations! Learning a new language is one of the best and most rewarding decisions you can make in your lifetime. It opens up a door to a whole new world and a window into the minds of the people in that world. There is no better way to understand a nation and communicate with its people than by studying their literature and culture in their native language. At the same time, learning any new language is also a major commitment. It takes time, practice, and a great deal of patience. You learned your native language during the first seven years of your life through constant exposure to and use of the language. You shouldn't expect to learn a new language fluently in any time shorter than that. However, you can learn the basics of a language, understand everyday conversations, and make yourself understood to a fair degree in a couple of years with consistent practice and the right kind of input. This course is designed to help you take that initial step toward mastering Tagalog, the language of the Philippines. This course covers most major Tagalog grammatical concepts and basic vocabulary used in everyday situations. It should give you the head start you need toward becoming a proficient speaker of Tagalog.

## **HOW TO USE THIS COURSE**

This beginner-level course is designed to use both audio and visual instruction to help you master the basics of Tagalog. No previous knowledge of Tagalog at all is assumed.

Following this introduction, you'll find a section that teaches you everything you need to know about Tagalog spelling and pronunciation. Use it in conjunction with the audio to become fully acquainted with the sounds of Tagalog. Imitate the native speakers that you hear, but don't be worried if you don't sound quite native yourself; after all, you're not. Good pronunciation will come over time. Just use the pronunciation section enough that you're familiar with the sounds and spelling of Tagalog. Then, you can begin the 15 lessons, each of which is dedicated to a particular topic and to a number of structural points.

As a general piece of advice, fight the urge to skip ahead or rush over any part of this course. It's designed in a careful sequence, and each section represents a building block that adds to everything before it while at the same time preparing you for everything that comes after it. Always move ahead at your own pace; if you don't understand something, or if you don't feel quite comfortable with some point, simply go over it again. That's the best way to make sure your learning experience is painless and effective.

Each lesson of this course contains the following sections:

### **Vocabulary Warm-up**

The vocabulary warm-up kicks off the lesson with key words you'll hear in the dialogue. Many will be related to the topic of the lesson; some will be related to the grammar you'll be learning in that particular lesson.

### **Dialogue**

The dialogue in each lesson serves the double purpose of allowing you to read and hear natural Tagalog at work and to learn about Filipino culture as well. Read these dialogues carefully; they'll contain the grammar and key phrases that you will be learning later in the lesson. Don't be afraid to read them several times, in fact, and to listen to them on the recordings a few times as well. Always go at your own pace, and stick with a section until you're comfortable with it.

### **Vocabulary**

The vocabulary list contains new words from the dialogue as well as other words related to the overall topic of the lesson. You can refer to this list while reading through the dialogue, but, of course, the translation of the dialogue is provided as well. Use the vocabulary list as a chance to build a good foundation for your Tagalog vocabulary, one topic at a time. Experiment with different methods of learning vocabulary—spoken or written repetition, flashcards, practice sentences, web searches, etc. Be creative, and find what works for you.

### **Key Phrases**

The key phrases section contains more practical words or phrases related to the lesson topic. Don't worry if you don't grasp the grammar behind each phrase right away. Treat the phrases as an extended vocabulary list; the grammar will be filled in as you progress, and the idiomatic and practical expressions you learn in the key phrases will come in handy.

### **Culture Notes**

Each lesson contains two culture notes. These notes are intended to give you a window on Filipino culture. In these notes, you will learn everything

from the history of the city of Manila to the tradition of giving souvenir gifts, or *pasulabong*; from the ingredients typically found in Filipino cuisine to the history of the Tagalog language itself.

## Grammar

Each lesson contains a number of notes on particular aspects of Tagalog grammar. These notes are introduced in a careful sequence, so that they build on one another and explain the key structures you encounter in the lesson, particularly the dialogue. Each point is explained in plain and simple language, and there are plenty of examples to help you understand. Grammar can be tricky for many beginning language learners, especially with a language that looks and sounds so different from English. But take your time on the grammar notes. Grammar is the nuts-and-bolts of any language learning; without it, you wouldn't know how to put words together!

## Exercises

The exercises in each lesson will give you more opportunities to practice the grammar and vocabulary you've learned in each lesson. In addition to the exercise at the end of the lesson, there is also a comprehension exercise following the dialogue to test your understanding of what occurred in the dialogue. Each lesson includes an answer key at the end so you can check your progress.

## Independent Challenge

The most important part of learning a language is practice. These challenge activities are designed to give you ideas for finding contexts in your life where you can practice your Tagalog. They're meant as a guide; if you feel inspired to create your own independent challenge activities, go right ahead. The more contact you have with a language, the better you'll learn it. And don't forget about the Internet. Language learners have an incredible tool at their disposal—you can find newspapers, blogs, online references, travel and tourism sites, and much, much more, all of which can be used to add depth and color to language lessons.

## Audio

The audio portion of this course is divided into two sets: Set A and Set B.

**Set A** includes the dialogue, vocabulary, key phrases, and several grammar examples from each lesson. This part of the audio course should be used along with the book, following the order of each lesson. This allows you to hear how the words on the page sound in spoken Tagalog. A good approach is to read each section first without the audio, so that you're prepared to get the most out of the audio when you do listen to it. Then, take it step-by-

step, and listen to each section at a time, always allowing yourself the time and repetition that you need.

**\*Helpful Hint:** Once you've listened to the dialogue several times while reading along in the book, try listening to it without the aid of the book. This will help attune your ear to Tagalog, and it will make understanding the spoken language easier down the line.

**Set B** is intended to be used on the go to supplement your studies. It contains the dialogue from each lesson, broken down into easily digestible sentences. You'll hear pauses after each line of dialogue; use the pause to repeat the line and practice your pronunciation. Set B also includes several audio-only exercises that do not appear in the book but are based on the grammar points. A good way to make use of Set B is to listen to it following each lesson, once you've comfortably completed reading the text and listening to the Set A audio. Use Set B wherever it's convenient for you—in the car, on the train, at the gym, while you do dishes, in the garden—it's up to you. You can also use Set B as a review of lessons you completed long ago to keep you on your toes!

## **Glossary**

At the end of this book you'll find a Tagalog-English / English-Tagalog glossary. It includes all of the words from the vocabulary lists, plus any important vocabulary that's taught in the grammar notes. It also includes a wide range of common and practical words that may not come up in the context of this course. It's not meant as a complete dictionary, but it certainly includes enough to be a valuable reference tool for the beginner student of Tagalog.

As you use this course, keep this in mind—language learning is a gradual process; it won't happen overnight. Still, with repeated exposure and practice, you'll find yourself becoming a better and better Tagalog speaker each time you pick up this course. But languages aren't used by books; they're used by people. So, if you can, seek out speakers of Tagalog where you live or on the Internet. That way, you can practice the language and discover new people while you do.

# Tagalog Pronunciation

Tagalog uses the Latin alphabet, so you shouldn't come across any characters you're unfamiliar with, but the pronunciation of Tagalog is slightly different from how it looks.

Let's begin with the vowels.

## VOWELS

There are five vowels in Tagalog, just as in English:

a	like the <b>a</b> in <b>father</b>	<i>labada</i> (laundry)
e	like the <b>e</b> in <b>met</b>	<i>estudyante</i> (student)
i	like the <b>ee</b> in <b>meet</b>	<i>hindi</i> (no)
o	like the <b>o</b> in <b>forty</b>	<i>mo</i> (your)
u	like the <b>oo</b> in <b>food</b>	<i>ulit</i> (again)

Double vowels appear often in Tagalog words. When you see two vowels in a row, keep in mind that each one is pronounced separately in Tagalog.

<i>saan</i> (where)	'sah-ahn'
<i>leeg</i> (neck)	'leh-ehg'
<i>maliit</i> (short)	'mah-lee-eet'
<i>oo</i> (yes)	'oh-oh'
<i>umuulan</i> (it is raining)	'oo-moo-oo-lahn'

## CONSONANTS

Consonants are less tricky, though there are a few things you should know about them. There are 15 consonants in Tagalog:

b	like the <b>b</b> in <b>bleed</b>	<i>bahay</i> (house)
k	like the <b>k</b> in <b>karma</b>	<i>ka</i> (you)

d	like the <b>d</b> in <b>ladder</b> when followed by 'y' or 'iy,' like the <b>j</b> in <b>jury</b>	<i>dalawa</i> (two) <i>diyan</i> (there)
g	like the <b>g</b> in <b>goal</b>	<i>gabi</i> (evening)
h	like the <b>h</b> in <b>hair</b>	<i>hindi</i> (no)
l	like the <b>l</b> in <b>light</b>	<i>lang</i> (only)
m	like the <b>m</b> in <b>mother</b>	<i>may</i> (there is)
n	like the <b>n</b> in <b>never</b> when followed by 'y' or 'iy,' like the <b>ni</b> in <b>opinion</b>	<i>na</i> (already) <i>niya</i> (his/her)
ng	alone, like <b>nung</b> at the end of a word, like the <b>ng</b> in <b>song</b> at the beginning of a word, like the <b>ng</b> in <b>hungry</b>	<i>ng</i> (linker) <i>ang</i> (the)  <i>ngayon</i> (today)
p	like the <b>p</b> in <b>spit</b>	<i>pa</i> (yet)
r	like the <b>r</b> in <b>water</b>	<i>rito</i> (here)
s	like the <b>s</b> in <b>set</b> when followed by 'y' or 'iy,' like the <b>sh</b> in <b>sheet</b>	<i>saan</i> (where) <i>siya</i> (he/she)
t	like the <b>t</b> in <b>still</b> when followed by 'y' or 'iy,' like the <b>ch</b> in <b>cheat</b>	<i>tatay</i> (father) <i>tiya</i> (aunt)
w	like the <b>w</b> in <b>well</b>	<i>wala</i> (nothing)
y	like the <b>y</b> in <b>yak</b>	<i>yata</i> (it seems)

Note that 'k' comes before 'd,' 'g,' and 'h' in the Tagalog alphabet; in this course, however, you will see words alphabetized in the English order for your ease in locating them. Also, note that 'ng' is a letter of its own in Tagalog.

## STRESS

Tagalog uses stress, or emphasis, on certain syllables, and this stress can change the meaning of a word. Take for example the word *baka*. *Baka* without any stress (bah-kah) means "cow" or "beef"; but when there is stress on the final syllable, ending in a glottal stop (bah-KAH'), *baka* means "perhaps." There is no indication in written Tagalog of where the stress occurs. Listen carefully to the audio that accompanies this course, and pay careful attention to the stress on certain words as you learn them.

# LESSON

# 1

*Magandang umaga!*

Good morning!

In this first lesson, you will learn some formal greetings in Tagalog as well as how to say good-bye and make personal introductions. You will also begin to learn about Tagalog pronouns and grammatical markers, and become familiar with expressing formality and respect in Filipino culture. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up!

## 1A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Magandang umaga!	<i>Good morning!</i>
Ano'ng pangalan mo?	<i>What's your name?</i>
Ako ay si John.	<i>I am John.</i>
Kamusta* ka?	<i>How are you?</i>
Kinagagalak ko kayong makilala.	<i>I'm glad to meet you.</i>
Mabuti.	<i>Fine.</i>
Salamat.	<i>Thank you.</i>

## 1B. DIALOGUE

John is learning Tagalog in the Philippines. He lives in Makati, a bustling commercial district in Metropolitan Manila. One morning as he is about to leave for language school, he meets an elderly neighbor, Mrs. Reyes, just outside his apartment building for the first time.

\*The more formal spelling of this word is *kumusta*; however, we shall use the more colloquial *kamusta* throughout this course.

John: Magandang umaga po.

Ginang Reyes: Magandang umaga rin. Aba, marunong ka ng Tagalog!

John: Hindi. Kaunti lang po.

Ginang Reyes: Taga-saan ka? Taga-Amerika?

John: Oo . . . I mean . . . opo, taga-Chicago po. Estudyante po ako rito.

Ginang Reyes: Dito ka rin nakatira?

John: Opo.

Ginang Reyes: Talaga? Fely nga pala ang pangalan ko. Ikaw? Ano'ng pangalan mo?

John: Ako po ay si John. Kinagagalak ko kayong makilala.

Ginang Reyes: Ako rin. Kamusta ka, John?

John: Mabuti po. Salamat. Kayo po, kamusta?

Ginang Reyes: Mabuti rin.

John: Paalam na po.

Ginang Reyes: O sige, John. Magkita ulit tayo!

*John: Good morning, ma'am.*

*Mrs. Reyes: Good morning to you too. Wow, you know Tagalog!*

*John: No. Just a little.*

*Mrs. Reyes: Where are you from? From America?*

*John: Yeah . . . I mean . . . yes ma'am, from Chicago. I'm a student here.*

*Mrs. Reyes: Do you live here too?*

*John: Yes, ma'am.*

*Mrs. Reyes: Really? My name is Fely, by the way. And you? What's your name?*

*John: I'm John. I'm glad to meet you, ma'am.*

*Mrs. Reyes: Me too. How are you, John?*

*John: Fine, thank you. How are you?*

*Mrs. Reyes: I'm fine too.*

*John: Good-bye.*

*Mrs. Reyes: All right, John. See you again!*

## **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. When John sees Mrs. Reyes, he says to her  
a) *Kamusta ka?*      b) *Magandang umaga.*      c) *Paalam na po.*
2. Mrs. Reyes is surprised that John knows  
a) her name      b) where she is from      c) Tagalog
3. To this, John responds with  
a) *Taga-Chicago.*      b) *Kaunti lang.*      c) *Ako ay si John.*
4. *Mabuti* means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Salamat* means \_\_\_\_\_.

## **1C. VOCABULARY**

<i>aba</i>	<i>wow</i>
<i>din/rin*</i>	<i>also, too</i>
<i>dito/rito*</i>	<i>here</i>
<i>estudyante</i>	<i>student</i>
<i>ginang</i>	<i>Mrs.</i>
<i>hindi</i>	<i>no</i>
<i>ka</i>	<i>you (subject pronoun)</i>
<i>kaunti</i>	<i>a little</i>
<i>lang</i>	<i>only, just</i>
<i>magkita</i>	<i>to meet</i>
<i>marunong</i>	<i>to know how to, to be able to</i>
<i>mo</i>	<i>you (object pronoun)</i>
<i>na</i>	<i>now, already</i>
<i>nakatira</i>	<i>living, a resident of</i>
<i>nga pala</i>	<i>by the way</i>
<i>oo</i>	<i>yes (informal)</i>
<i>opo/oho</i>	<i>yes (formal)</i>
<i>po/ho</i>	<i>word added to phrases to express respect</i>

saan	<i>where</i>
si	<i>marker used with names of people</i>
sige	<i>bye, go ahead, okay (from Spanish seguir, to go on), alright</i>
taga	<i>from (used with place of origin)</i>
tayo	<i>we (inclusive)</i>
ulit	<i>again</i>

\*In Tagalog, the “d” in *din* and *dito* often changes to “r” when these words follow a word ending in a vowel. It is best to memorize this as a rule of thumb, and learn exceptions to the rule when you start learning more advanced Tagalog.

## 1D. KEY PHRASES

Here are some common greetings and conversational phrases in Tagalog:

Kamusta ka?	<i>How are you? (informal)</i>
Kamusta kayo/sila?	<i>How are you? (formal)</i>
Magandang umaga!	<i>Good morning!</i>
Magandang tanghali!	<i>Good noon!</i>
Magandang hapon!	<i>Good afternoon!</i>
Magandang gabi!	<i>Good evening!</i>
Ano'ng pangalan mo?	<i>What's your name? (informal)</i>
Ano'ng pangalan ninyo/nila?	<i>What's your name? (formal)</i>
Kinagagalak kitang makilala.	<i>Glad to meet you. (informal)</i>
Kinagagalak ko kayong/silang makilala.	<i>Glad to meet you. (formal)</i>
Sige!	<i>Good-bye! (informal)</i>
Paalam!	<i>Good-bye! (formal)</i>
Magkita ulit tayo!	<i>Let's see each other again.</i>

## 1E. CULTURE NOTE 1

Politeness is highly valued in Filipino culture, and the language can express it in different ways. The use of the honorific particles *po* and *ho* in Tagalog, as you have observed from the dialogue, is an important sign of respect. They are used when speaking with an older person or with strang-

ers. In addition, the word “yes” has both a familiar (*oo*) and a polite (*opo*) form as well. Even the use of specific pronouns expresses both formality and respect. When addressing someone in a formal way, one is expected to use the plural “you,” *kayo*, as in *Kamusta po kayo?* To show an even higher degree of politeness in Tagalog, use the plural “they,” *sila*. *Kamusta po sila?*, for example, accords a person even more respect.

## 1F. GRAMMAR

### ANG/Subject Pronouns

There are three types of pronouns in Tagalog: ANG pronouns (subject pronouns), NG pronouns (object pronouns), and SA pronouns. Each has its own function in the sentence, and we will explore them each in their own lesson. First, let’s look at ANG pronouns, also known as subject pronouns. ANG pronouns are the words we use as the subject focus of a sentence: I, you, he, she, etc. In Tagalog, the ANG pronouns are as follows:

<b>ako</b>	<i>I</i>
<b>ikaw, ka</b>	<i>you</i>
<b>siya</b>	<i>he/she</i>
<b>tayo</b>	<i>we (inclusive)</i>
<b>kami</b>	<i>we (exclusive)</i>
<b>kayo</b>	<i>you (formal sing., familiar/formal pl.)</i>
<b>sila</b>	<i>they, you (formal pl.)</i>

Take note of the two ANG pronouns for “we.” *Kami* includes only the speaker and not the person being spoken to. *Tayo* includes both.

**Pilipino kami.**

*We (these other people and I) are Filipinos.*

**Pilipino tayo.**

*We (you and I) are Filipinos.*

### Basic Word Order and Expressing “to Be”

A basic sentence in Tagalog consists of a subject and a predicate. Simply put, the subject is the topic or what the sentence is about, and the predicate is a comment about the topic. The subject can be a noun or a pronoun, and the predicate can be another noun or pronoun, an adjective, or a verb. You will see these different sentence patterns later in the course, but for now let’s take a look at the most basic pattern where both the subject and the predicate are a noun or a pronoun. Consider the following example:

**subject/topic = *ako* (I)**

**predicate/comment = *Amerikano* (American)**

Given these two elements, the next question is how to order them in a sentence. In English, the normal order is that the subject comes first and then the predicate. In Tagalog, two patterns are possible:

**1. Subject (*ako*) + Predicate (*Amerikano*)**

**2. Predicate (*Amerikano*) + Subject (*ako*)**

To form a sentence using these elements, we have to link them. In English, we use a form of the verb “to be.”

***I am American.***

In Tagalog, there is no verb “to be”; instead, the linker *ay* is used with the subject + predicate pattern.

**Ako ay Amerikano**

***I am American.***

However, this sentence pattern (subject + predicate), while grammatically correct and appropriate for literary language, is not generally used in everyday, conversational Tagalog. Instead, the predicate + subject pattern is used. In this pattern, the linker *ay* is omitted.

**Amerikano *ako*.**

***I am American.***

To express the negative of this type of sentence, the word *hindi* (no/not) is introduced and placed at the beginning of the sentence, followed by the subject and then the predicate:

**Hindi *ako* Amerikano.**

To make these statements into questions, we simply change our intonation to make them sound like questions. Compare the following pair of sentences:

**Pilipino *ka*.**

***You're Filipino.***

**Pilipino *ka*?**

***You're Filipino?***

**Hindi *ka* Amerikano.**

***You're not American.***

**Hindi *ka* Amerikano?**

***You're not American?***

Now let's take a look at some examples illustrating what you have learned so far:

**Pilipino ako.**

*I am Filipino.*

**Estudyante siya.**

*He/she is a student.*

**Taga-Maynila sila?**

*They're from Manila?*

**Amerikano ka?**

*You're American?*

In the last sentence, note that the second-person singular pronoun used is *ka*. *Ikaw* is only used with the subject + predicate pattern or by itself.

**Ikaw ay Amerikano.**

*You are American.*

**Amerikano ka.**

*You are American.*

## **The Markers *Ang* and *Si***

Articles are words that restrict the meaning of a noun. The words “the,” “a,” and “an” are articles in English. Tagalog uses grammatical markers in place of articles. Markers not only restrict the meaning of a noun, but also indicate its function in a sentence. The equivalent of the English definite article “the” is the Tagalog marker *ang*. *Ang* marks a given noun as the subject of the sentence, which in English is marked as being in the nominative case.

Let's first look at some phrases using *ang*:

**ang pangalan** *the name*

**ang umaga** *the morning*

**ang estudyante** *the student*

It's also important to note here that in spoken Tagalog, *ang* is often replaced with the demonstrative adjective *iyung*, meaning “that” (sometimes shortened to ‘yung).

**Ang Amerikanong marunong ng Tagalog.**

*The American who knows Tagalog.*

**Ako 'yung Amerikanong marunong ng Tagalog.**

*I am the American who knows Tagalog.*

**Ang Pilipinong nakatira dito.**

*The Filipino who lives here.*

**Ikaw 'yung Pilipinong nakatira dito.**

*You are the Filipino who lives here.*

In Tagalog, there is another marker, *si*, which is used to indicate personal nouns—names of people that act as the subject of the sentence. *Si* replaces *ang* when the subject is a personal name. Observe the use of this marker in the following sentences:

**Mabuti si Maria.**

*Maria is fine.*

**Ikaw si John?**

*You're John?*

**Kamusta si Ginang Reyes?**

*How is Mrs. Reyes?*

## **1G. READING**

Read the following short composition written by John, the Tagalog learner from the dialogue. See if you understand what he is saying and try to figure out the meaning of the parts you don't understand. Observe how, to sound more colloquial, John drops the *ay* from the sentence *Ako ay si John*, and instead says, *Ako si John*.

**Kamusta po kayo? Ako si John. Amerikano ako na taga-Illinois. Estudyante ako dito sa Maynila na nag-aaral ng Tagalog sa kasa-lukuyan. Marunong ako ng Tagalog pero kaunti lang. Marami pa akong gustong matutunan. Ako ay nakatira sa Makati. Ikinagagalak ko kayong makilala. Maraming salamat po.**

*How are you? I am John. I'm an American, from Illinois. I'm a student here in Manila, presently studying Tagalog. I know how to speak Tagalog, but just a little. There's more I want to learn. I live in Makati. I'm glad to meet you. Thank you very much.*

## **1H. CULTURE NOTE 2**

There are more than 50 million speakers of Tagalog in the Philippines, mostly in the southern parts of Luzon, the archipelago's largest island. Other dialects spoken in the Philippines include Cebuano, Ilokano, Waray-Waray, Hiligaynon, Pangasinan, Bikol, Maranao, Maguindanao, Tausug, and Kapampangan, but the official language, Filipino, is based on Tagalog. There are also significant numbers of Tagalog-speaking communities in other countries, with the largest in the United States where it ranks as the sixth most-spoken language. Derived from "Taga-ilog," which literally means "from the river," Tagalog is an Austronesian language belonging to the Malayo-Polynesian subfamily, with outside influences from Malay and Chinese, and later from both Spanish and American English through four

centuries of colonial rule. This influence is seen in Tagalog words and their spelling. Tagalog had its own writing system based on an ancient script called the *Baybayin* that uses a syllabic alphabet, which the Spanish colonialists romanized. Even the modern alphabet has been changed several times to incorporate foreign sounds from both Spanish and English. There are thousands of loan words in Tagalog, particularly from Spanish, and the use of “Taglish,” the mixing of Tagalog and English, is common, especially in urban areas. In both spoken and written Tagalog, English words (sometimes spelled according to their Tagalog pronunciation, oftentimes not) are used alongside words of Spanish origin. Some of these borrowed words do have equivalent forms in Tagalog but their use is reserved for formal or literary language. But many of these loan words do not have Tagalog counterparts, especially those that refer to objects or concepts that did not exist in the country prior to the arrival of Westerners. However, in spite of all the foreign borrowings in Tagalog, the richness of the language remains intact. Foreign words are not absorbed into the language without being subjected to the complexity of Tagalog’s system of affixes—or syllables or letters fixed within a word—which permits any noun to be turned into a verb and vice versa. If language is the collective product of the genius of a people, as linguist Wilhelm Humboldt put it, affixation is the genius of Tagalog and, as we’ll see throughout this course, is its challenge as well. To see what the *Baybayin* alphabet looks like, including sample texts written in this ancient script, go to [www.mts.net/~pmorrow/index.htm](http://www.mts.net/~pmorrow/index.htm).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*saan pangalan magandang kamusta paalam ako mabuti*

A. \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_ gabi! Ano’ng \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ mo?

B. Carlos po. \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ po kayo?

A. \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ naman. Taga- \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ka, Carlos?

B. Taga-Cebu po.

A. \_\_\_\_\_ (6) \_\_\_\_\_ nga pala si Letty.

B. Sige. \_\_\_\_\_ (7) \_\_\_\_\_ na po.

B. Fill in each blank with either the marker *ang* or *si*.

1. Kinagagalak kong makilala \_\_\_\_\_ Ginang Ramos.

2. Mahirap \_\_\_\_\_ Tagalog.

3. Marunong ng Tagalog \_\_\_\_\_ Carol.

4. Taga-saan \_\_\_\_\_ Gary?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ pangalan ko ay Linda.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ estudyante ay taga-Tokyo.
7. Kamusta \_\_\_\_\_ Nora?

C. Read the following short dialogue and supply the missing ANG pronouns.

A: Amerikano ka?

B: Hindi, Canadian \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_.

A: Marunong ng Tagalog si Sara?

B: Oo, marunong \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

A: Taga-Korea kayo?

B: Hindi. Taga-dito \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

A: Estudyante si Tisay?

B: Oo, estudyante \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

A: Pilipino ka?

B: Oo, Pilipino \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_.

## **ANSWER KEY**

### **Comprehension Practice**

1. b) *Magandang umaga.*    2. c) *Tagalog*    3. b) *Kaunti lang.*    4. *Mabuti* means "fine."    5. *Salamat* means "thank you."

### **Exercises**

- A. 1. magandang    2. pangalan    3. kamusta    4. mabuti    5. saan    6. ako  
7. paalam
- B. 1. si    2. ang    3. si    4. si    5. ang    6. ang    7. si
- C. 1. ako    2. siya    3. kami    4. siya    5. ako

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

Now it's your turn to practice everything you've learned so far by putting it to practical use. Throughout this course, it will be your task to keep a Tagalog journal. For your first entry, write down an imaginary conversation you might have with someone you meet shortly after arriving in Manila. Being that this person is someone you are meeting for the first time, try to use the formal expressions that you have learned in this lesson. If it's an older person, express yourself politely with *po* or *ho*. If you have access to a computer, you can even try to have a real conversation with a Tagalog speaker online. There are several chat rooms you may use on the Internet. You may try visiting any of these websites:

[www.chatmag.com/topics/nations/asia/philippines.html](http://www.chatmag.com/topics/nations/asia/philippines.html)

[www.mylanguageexchange.com/learn/Tagalog.asp](http://www.mylanguageexchange.com/learn/Tagalog.asp)

**208.186.112.53/mff**

Remember to make a note of this conversation and write it in your journal. Have fun with this challenge!

## LESSON

# 2

*Saan ka pupunta?*

Where are you going?

In this lesson, you will learn more greetings and salutations—this time, used in informal settings, with people you know. In the grammar sections, you'll learn how to express possession and the existence of something (there is, there are), and how to formulate basic questions. You'll also familiarize yourself with Filipino “small talk” as well as some other features that make the Tagalog language unique. But first, let's do a warm-up of some vocabulary words that you will learn in this lesson.

### 2A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Hoy.	<i>Hey.</i>
Ano'ng balita?	<i>What's new?</i>
Wala naman.	<i>Nothing much.</i>
Saan ka galing?	<i>Where have you been? (Where are you coming from?)</i>
Saan ka pupunta?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
Kailan?	<i>When?</i>
Ingat ka.	<i>Take care.</i>
Ikaw din.	<i>You too.</i>

### 2B. DIALOGUE

Ronald is at the bus stop waiting for a bus one Saturday afternoon. He runs into Alma, a family friend whom he hasn't seen in a while. Alma is on her way to Intramuros, the famous walled city of Manila, where she works as a tour guide.

Ronald: Alma! Kamusta ka?

Alma: Hoy, Ronald! Mabuti. Ikaw, kamusta?  
Ano'ng balita?

Ronald: Wala naman. Okey lang. Buhay pa.

Alma: Saan ka galing?

Ronald: Diyan lang. Sa bahay ng kaibigan ko. Ikaw, saan ka pupunta?

Alma: Sa Intramuros. May pasok ako.

Ronald: Sabado, may trabaho ka?

Alma: Oo, may obertaym pero sa hapon lang. Maraming turista ngayon.

Ronald: Oh, kailan ka pupunta sa amin?

Alma: Sa Lunes siguro.

Ronald: Ah, ayan na ang bus ko. Sige na, magkita na lang tayo.

Alma: Sige, ingat ka.

Ronald. Oo, sige. Ikaw din at kamusta sa pamilya mo!

*Ronald: Alma! How are you?*

*Alma: Hey, Ronald! I'm fine. How are you? What's new?*

*Ronald: Nothing much. Just okay. Still alive.*

*Alma: Where are you coming from?*

*Ronald: Just around here. I was at my friend's house. And you? Where are you going?*

*Alma: To Intramuros. I'm going to work.*

*Ronald: You have work on Saturday?*

*Alma: Yeah, I'm doing overtime but only in the afternoon. There are a lot of tourists today.*

*Ronald: When are you going to our house?*

*Alma: Maybe on Monday.*

*Ronald: Oh, there's my bus. Bye. See you soon.*

*Alma: All right, take care.*

*Ronald: Yeah, you too. And regards to your family.*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

- When Ronald sees Alma at the bus stop, he asks her  
a) *Kamusta kayo?*      b) *Kamusta ka?*      c) *Ano'ng balita?*
- Ronald is coming from  
a) work      b) a friend's house      c) the bus stop
- Alma is going to work on Saturday but only  
a) *sa umaga*      b) *sa hapon*      c) *sa gabi*
- Sige* is a way of saying \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ingat ka* is a familiar expression that means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 2C. VOCABULARY

ayan	<i>there (demonstrative)</i>
bahay	<i>house</i>
baka	<i>maybe, perhaps</i>
balita	<i>news</i>
buhay	<i>alive</i>
galing	<i>come (from)</i>
hapon	<i>afternoon</i>
hoy	<i>hey</i>
ikaw	<i>you</i>
Ingat ka/kayo.	<i>Take care.</i>
ito	<i>this; here</i>
kaibigan	<i>friend</i>
kailan	<i>when (question word)</i>
lang	<i>only, just</i>
Lunes	<i>Monday</i>
Magkita tayo.	<i>Let's meet. (from the verb magkita, "to meet")</i>
may	<i>used to express have and there is, there are</i>
na	<i>already</i>

obertaym	<i>overtime</i>
oo	<i>yes (familiar)</i>
pa	<i>still, yet</i>
pamilya	<i>family</i>
pasok	<i>school, work (noun from the verb pasok, "to go in")</i>
pero	<i>but</i>
pupunta	<i>will go</i>
sa amin	<i>to us (referring to one's house, "to ours")</i>
saan	<i>where</i>
Sabado	<i>Saturday</i>
trabaho	<i>job, work</i>
turista (mga turista)	<i>tourist(s)</i>
wala	<i>nothing</i>

## 2D. KEY PHRASES

The following are some common phrases used by Tagalog speakers to greet someone and take leave informally:

Hoy.	<i>Hey.</i>
Kamusta ka?	<i>How are you (singular, informal)?</i>
Mabuti.	<i>Fine.</i>
Buhay pa.	<i>Still alive.</i>
Nakakaraos naman.	<i>Surviving.</i>
Saan ka pupunta?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
Saan ka galing?	<i>Where have you been?/Where are you coming from?</i>
Diyan lang.	<i>Just around here (lit., only there).</i>
Magkita na lang tayo.	<i>Let's see each other.</i>
Diyana na.	<i>(equivalent to "I'll leave you now")</i>
Ingat ka/kayo.	<i>Take care.</i>
Ikaw din.	<i>You too. (familiar, singular)</i>

You also heard the mention of *Lunes* and *Sabado* in the dialogue. Let's learn the rest of the days of the week.

Linggo	<i>Sunday</i>
Lunes	<i>Monday</i>
Martes	<i>Tuesday</i>
Miyerkoles	<i>Wednesday</i>
Huwebes	<i>Thursday</i>
Biyernes	<i>Friday</i>
Sabado	<i>Saturday</i>

## 2E. CULTURE NOTE 1

A notable feature of Tagalog is the absence of greetings such as "hi," "hello," and "how are you?" Instead, these are expressed with phrases borrowed and adapted from both Spanish ("Kamusta ka?") and English. But while these greetings are widely used, it's also common to ask questions such as "*Saan ka pupunta?*" (Where are you going?) or "*Saan ka galing?*" (Where are you coming from?) when talking to someone you are familiar with. These phrases are considered to be informal greetings rather than real questions that are meant to be answered directly, much like "How's it going" in English. A vague expression such as *diyan lang* (just around here) would be an acceptable response.

Another familiar greeting is *hoy*, equivalent to the English "hey," which is used to get someone's attention. As with the English "hey," *hoy* is used only in informal situations with someone you are very familiar with, such as a really good friend or sibling.

## 2F. GRAMMAR

### Expressing Possession with NG Pronouns

In Lesson 1, you learned one set of pronouns in Tagalog: ANG pronouns. Now it's time to introduce you to a second set of pronouns: NG pronouns (or object pronouns). One function of NG pronouns is to express possession, such as my, your, or his. These pronouns are also used with a class of Tagalog verbs that we'll learn later on, so it's important to learn them well.

ko	<i>my/me</i>
mo	<i>your/you (singular)</i>
niya	<i>his/him/her</i>
natin	<i>our/us (inclusive)</i>
namin	<i>our/us (exclusive)</i>
ninyo	<i>your/you (plural and singular formal)</i>
nila	<i>their/them</i>

When used to express possession, NG pronouns are placed immediately after the “possessed” noun, as in the following examples:

kaibigan ko	<i>my friend</i>
kaibigan niya	<i>his/her friend</i>
pangalan mo	<i>your (singular, familiar) name</i>
pangalan nila	<i>their name</i>
pamilya namin	<i>our (exclusive) family</i>
pamilya natin	<i>our (inclusive) family</i>

NG pronouns are usually part of a phrase that begins with a marker (*ang*, *ng*, or *sa*). Take the example of the NG pronoun *mo* in the following sentences:

**Ayan na ang bus mo.**  
*There's your bus.*

**Ano ang pangalan mo?**  
*What is your name?*

### **Expressing “to Have” and “There Is/There Are”**

In English, possession is usually expressed with the verb “to have,” and the existence of something is expressed with the phrase “there is, there are.” In Tagalog, both these concepts are expressed not with a verb but the word *may*, which is the shortened form of the word *mayroon*.

The following sentences use *may* to express the existence of something or someone.

**May bahay.**  
*There is a house.*

**May balita.**  
*There's news.*

Now, let's look at how *may* is used to express the concept of having something or someone. Notice how the words are ordered in the sentences below. *May* is placed first, then the object, and then the subject or ANG pronoun (*ako*, *ka*, *siya*, etc.).

**May trabaho ka? Oo, may trabaho ako.**  
*Do you have work? Yes, I have work.*

**May kaibigan siya? Oo, may kaibigan siya.**  
*Does he/she have a friend? Yes, he/she has a friend.*

*Mayroon* (the word from which *may* is derived) should be used when there is no object mentioned. The subject pronoun is also dropped from this sentence formation. For example:

**May trabaho kayo? Oo, mayroon.**

*Do you (singular formal or plural) have work? Yes, I/we do.*

**May bus na? Oo, mayroon.**

*Is there a bus already? Yes, there is.*

The opposite of *may* and *mayroon* is *wala*, which is the Tagalog word for “nothing.” It expresses “there isn’t,” “there aren’t,” or “to not have.” This will be further explained in a later lesson. For now, note how *wala* is used to answer *may* questions in the negative.

**May balita ka galing sa Manila? Wala!**

*Do you have news from Manila? No.*

## Forming Questions with Question Words

We have seen how forming a yes or no question in Tagalog is very simple. Now, let’s look at how questions are formed with interrogative or question words.

So far, you’ve learned two question words in Tagalog: *Ano?* (What?) and *Saan?* (Where?). Here are some more:

<b>Sino?</b>	<i>Who?</i>
<b>Kailan?</b>	<i>When?</i>
<b>Bakit?</b>	<i>Why?</i>
<b>Alin?</b>	<i>Which?</i>
<b>Ilan?</b>	<i>How many?</i>
<b>Magkano?</b>	<i>How much?</i>
<b>Paano?</b>	<i>How? (manner or means)</i>
<b>Gaano?</b>	<i>How? (qualitative and quantitative)</i>

**Saan ka pupunta?**

*Where are you going?*

**Bakit kayo pupunta sa Makati?**

*Why are you (pl.) going to Makati?*

**Paano kami pupunta diyan?**  
*How are we getting there?*  
*(lit., How are we going there?)*

As you can observe, the order of the words in interrogative sentences using question words is slightly different from English:

**Question Word + Subject + Verb**

**Saan + ka + pupunta?**

*Where + you + are going?*

## **The Marker *Sa* and *SA* Pronouns**

While *ang* marks the subject of a sentence, *sa* marks a place or location, and is sometimes called the locative marker in Tagalog. It can express the meaning of several English locational or directional prepositions, such as “to,” “at,” “in,” “on,” or “from.”

**May Internet ako sa bahay.**

*I have Internet at home.*

**Pupunta ako sa Manila.**

*I am going to Manila.*

**Galing sa Internet ang balita.**

*The news comes from the Internet.*

*Sa* is also used to indicate a future time expressed as a specific day, date, season, event, or occasion.

**Pupunta ako sa bahay mo sa Sabado.**

*I'm going to your house on Saturday.*

**May parti tayo sa hapon.**

*We have a party in the afternoon.*

*Sa* can also be used with *SA* pronouns to form the Tagalog equivalent of possessive pronouns in English. The *SA* pronouns are:

akin	<i>me/my</i>
iyol'yo	<i>you/your (sing.)</i>
kaniya	<i>him/his/her</i>
atin	<i>us/our (incl.)</i>
amin	<i>us/our (excl.)</i>
inyo	<i>you/your (pl.; sing. formal)</i>
kanila	<i>them/their</i>

The above pronouns are used only with the markers *sa* and *kay/kina* (see below). To form the possessive pronoun construction using *sa* and the SA pronouns introduced above, simply place *sa* before the SA pronoun:

<b>sa akin</b>	<i>mine</i>
<b>sa iyo/ 'yo</b>	<i>yours (sing.)</i>
<b>sa kaniya</b>	<i>his/hers</i>
<b>sa atin</b>	<i>ours (incl.)</i>
<b>sa amin</b>	<i>ours (excl.)</i>
<b>sa inyo</b>	<i>yours (pl.; sing. formal)</i>
<b>sa kanila</b>	<i>theirs</i>

As the table above shows, the construction ***sa + SA pronoun*** expresses possession in the same way possessive pronouns in English (such as *mine*, *yours*, *his*, *hers*, etc.) do.

**Kailan ka pupunta sa amin?**

*When are you going to ours (our place)?*

**Galing ako sa inyo.**

*I came from yours (your place).*

**Sa akin ang bahay.**

*The house is mine.*

**Sa iyo ang trabaho.**

*The job is yours.*

**Kanino ito? Sa atin.**

*Whose is this? It's ours (incl.).*

*Sa* changes to *kay* (plural *kina*) when used with a person's name.

**Kanino ito? Kay Ronaldo.**

*Whose is this? Ronaldo's.*

**Kamusta kay Ronaldo!**

*Regards to Ronaldo!*

**Kanino ito? Kina Ronaldo at Tina.**

*Whose is this? Ronaldo and Tina's.*

## **2G. READING**

Read the following Tagalog signs and headlines, and underline the words that you already recognize.

**Bagyong Galing sa Tsina  
Darating sa Bansa**

*Typhoon from China Now Headed  
to the Country*

Pangulo Pupunta sa APEC Summit	<i>President Going to the APEC Summit</i>
Batang Aktor May Pamilya na	<i>Young Actor Has Family</i>
Demonstrasyon sa Makati sa Linggo	<i>Makati Demonstration on Sunday</i>
Walang Debate sa Senado	<i>No Debate in the Senate</i>
Prinsipe ng Brunei Dadalaw sa Pilipinas	<i>Prince of Brunei Visiting the Philippines</i>
May Krisis ng Langis	<i>There's an Oil Crisis</i>
May Lutong Ulam	<i>There's Cooked Food (for sale)</i>
Walang Pasok sa Lunes	<i>No Classes/Work on Monday</i>
Walang Labasan	<i>No Exit</i>

## 2H. CULTURE NOTE 2

The walled city of Intramuros stands as a testament to Manila's colorful past. It covers an area of 64 hectares and is fortified with massive walls, bulwarks, and moats. Originally it was the site of a Muslim settlement ruled by Rajah Soliman, then conquered for the Spanish crown by Miguel Lopez de Legazpi in 1571. Intramuros, which means "within the walls," boasted palaces, cathedrals, monasteries, schools, and opulent residences at the time when the city of Boston was still being built out of marshlands. It remained the center of Spanish rule, surviving attacks from Dutch and British invaders and native revolts until 1898, when the Americans took the reins of colonial power. In World War II, it fell to the Japanese who then used it as their garrison and prison. It was the target of heavy aerial bombings in the Battle of the Liberation of Manila, which reduced the city almost to a heap of rubble. Today, with most of its walls restored, Intramuros, the only medieval city in Asia, is one of Manila's main attractions and an excellent starting point for any tourist visiting the capital.

For more information about Intramuros, including a map of the area, you can visit the following website: [www.tourism.gov.ph/intramuros/intramuros.htm](http://www.tourism.gov.ph/intramuros/intramuros.htm).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose the letter of the best response to each of the following questions:

1. Kamusta ka?  
a. Wala naman.      b. Mayroon.      c. Ito, buhay pa.
2. Saan ka pupunta?  
a. Sa Huwebes.      b. Sa bahay.      c. Sa buhay.

3. Ano'ng balita?  
a. Wala naman.      b. Diyan lang.      c. Mabuti.
4. Saan ka galing?  
a. Sa hapon.      b. Sa Sabado.      c. Sa Makati.
5. May trabaho ka?  
a. Sige.      b. May.      c. Wala.

B. Choose a word from the list below to complete the following dialogue.  
Note that there are more words than you can use.

ingat   mabuti   balita   saan   hoy   sa   sige   galing

A: \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_, Lorna! Kamusta ka?

B: Ito, buhay pa. Ikaw? Ano'ng \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

A: Wala naman. \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ka pupunta?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ bahay namin. Ikaw? Saan ka \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

A: Diyan lang. \_\_\_\_\_ (6) \_\_\_\_\_. Magkita na lang tayo.

B: \_\_\_\_\_ (7) \_\_\_\_\_ ka!

A: Ikaw din!

C. Read each of the following questions and fill in the blanks in the opposite column with the missing subject pronoun from the list.

ako   ka   mo   siya   sila   kami   tayo   kayo

1. May tanong ka?      Oo, may tanong \_\_\_\_\_.

2. May tanong tayo?      Oo, may tanong \_\_\_\_\_.

3. May tanong sila?      Oo, may tanong \_\_\_\_\_.

4. May tanong siya?      Oo, may tanong \_\_\_\_\_.

5. May tanong kami?      Oo, may tanong \_\_\_\_\_.

D. Read each of the following questions and fill in the blanks in the opposite column with the missing NG/object pronouns from the list.

1. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay mo? Oo, sa bahay \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay ko? Oo, sa bahay \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay niya? Oo, sa bahay \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay namin? Oo, sa bahay \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay ninyo? Oo, sa bahay \_\_\_\_\_.

E. Use your answers for each question in Exercise D to form expressions using possessive pronouns. The first one has been completed for you as an example.

1. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay nila? Oo, sa kanila.
2. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay ko? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay niya? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay namin? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Saan ka pupunta? Sa bahay ninyo? \_\_\_\_\_

## **ANSWER KEY**

### **Comprehension Practice**

1. b) *Kamusta ka?*
2. b) a friend's house
3. b) *sa hapon*
4. *Sige* is a way of saying "bye."
5. *Ingat ka* means "take care."

### **Exercises**

- A. 1. c) Ito, buhay pa. 2. b) Sa bahay. 3. a) Wala naman. 4. c) Sa Makati.  
5. c) Wala.
- B. 1. hoy 2. balita 3. saan 4. sa 5. galing 6. sige 7. ingat
- C. 1. ako 2. tayo 3. sila 4. siya 5. kayo
- D. 1. ko 2. mo 3. niya 4. ninyo 5. namin
- E. 1. - 2. Oo, sa 'yo. 3. Oo, sa kaniya. 4. Oo, sa inyo. 5. Oo, sa amin.

## **INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL**

In your journal, write an imaginary conversation with a Filipino friend you've run into. Use the expressions you have learned from this lesson. As a bonus task, venture to a chat room ([www.chatmag.com/topics/nations/asia/philippines.html](http://www.chatmag.com/topics/nations/asia/philippines.html)) and try to use these expressions in a conversation with at least one person you meet there. Make a note of how your friend responds and write down your conversation in your journal. You may also look for a Tagalog language newspaper webpage (several links to these pages can be found at [www.livinginthephilippines.com/news.html](http://www.livinginthephilippines.com/news.html)). Read some of the headlines and note the words that you recognize. Look up some of the words you are curious about and add them to the vocabulary list in your journal. Have fun!

## LESSON

# 3

## *Ang pamilya ko*

## My family

In this lesson, you will learn Tagalog words and phrases used to talk about one's family. You'll also learn how to describe people, say where they are, express yourself using numbers, and use linkers to modify nouns. You will also become familiar with the concept of family in Filipino culture. Let's get started with another vocabulary warm-up.

### 3A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Sino ito?	<i>Who is this?</i>
Ilan?	<i>How many?</i>
Pang-ilan?	<i>question word used to ask one's place in a sequence</i>
Ilang taon . . . ?	<i>How old . . . ?</i>
tapos	<i>then, afterward</i>
tingnan	<i>look (command)</i>
kain	<i>eat (command form)</i>
Nasaan?	<i>Where? (used to ask for location)</i>
ito/iyán	<i>this/that</i>
nasa	<i>preposition that indicates location (at/in/on)</i>

### 3B. DIALOGUE

It's a Saturday and Joel has his coworker Tess over for *meryenda* (an afternoon snack, usually taken between lunch and dinner at around 3 o'clock in the afternoon) at his parents' house. While they wait for the food to be

served, they sit in the living room and Tess looks at some framed photographs of Joel's family.

**Tess:** *Sino ito? Kapatid mo?*

**Joel:** *Oo, ang bunso namin. Si Marvin.*

**Tess:** *Ang guwapo! Ilan kayo?*

**Joel:** *Lima. Dalawang babae at tatlong lalaki.*

**Tess:** *Ah, talaga? Pang-ilan ka?*

**Joel:** *Pangatlo. Si Kuya Ronnie ang panganay, tapos si Ate Charo, tapos ako, si Jojie, tapos si Marvin. Ito ang nanay at tatay ko.*

**Tess:** *Ang babata pa. Ilang taon na sila?*

**Joel:** *Setenta. Lolo at lola na ang mga iyan. May apat na apo na. Tingnan mo ito, retrato ng mga anak ni Kuya Ronnie.*

**Tess:** *Ang gaganda ng mga pamangkin mo! Ilan ang may asawa na sa mga kapatid mo?*

**Joel:** *Si Kuya Ronnie at si Ate Charo. Si Jojie dalaga pa. Si Marvin, binata pa rin.*

**Tess:** *Nasaan sila?*

**Joel:** *Sina Jojie at Marvin, nasa eskwela. Si Kuya Ronnie, nasa Amerika. Doktor siya. Tapos si Ate Charo, nurse naman sa London . . .*

**Tess:** *Ang laki ng pamilya mo.*

**Joel:** *Ay, ayan na ang meryenda. Kain na tayo!*

**Tess:** *Who's this? Your brother?*

**Joel:** *Yes, our youngest, Marvin.*

**Tess:** *How handsome! How many are you?*

**Joel:** *Five. Two girls and three boys.*

**Tess:** *Oh, really? Where is your place (in the order)?*

**Joel:** *The third. (Older Brother) Ronnie is the eldest, then (Older Sister) Charo, then me, Jojie, then Marvin. These are my mother and father.*

*Tess: They look young. How old are they?*

*Joel: Seventy. They're already grandparents. They have four grandchildren. Look at this, a picture of (Older Brother) Ronnie's kids.*

*Tess: Your nieces and nephews are beautiful! How many of your siblings are already married?*

*Joel: (Older Brother) Ronnie and (Older Sister) Charo. Jojie is still single. Marvin is also still single.*

### *Tess: Where are they?*

*Joel: Jojie and Marvin are in school. (Older Brother) Ronnie is in America. He's a doctor. As for (Older Sister) Charo, she's a nurse in London . . .*

*Tess: What a big family you have!*

*Joel: Oh, there's the food. Let's eat!*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:



### **3C. VOCABULARY**

anak	<i>child, offspring</i>
apo	<i>grandchild</i>
asawa	<i>spouse</i>
ate	<i>older sister; also used as a title to address elder girls (near in relation or familial)</i>

babae	<i>woman</i>
bata	<i>child (noun), young (adjective)</i>
binata	<i>single male (bachelor)</i>
bunso	<i>youngest child, sibling</i>
dalaga	<i>single female (bachelorette)</i>
kamag-anak	<i>relative</i>
kapatid	<i>sibling</i>
kuya	<i>older brother; also used as a title to address older men (near in relation or familial)</i>
lalaki	<i>man</i>
lima	<i>five</i>
lola	<i>grandmother</i>
lolo	<i>grandfather</i>
magulang	<i>parent</i>
matanda	<i>old</i>
nanay	<i>mother</i>
pamangkin	<i>nephew, niece</i>
panganay	<i>firstborn</i>
tatay	<i>father</i>
tita	<i>title used to address an aunt</i>
tito	<i>title used to address an uncle</i>
tiya	<i>aunt</i>
tiyo	<i>uncle</i>

### **3D. KEY PHRASES**

Filipinos use the following phrases when talking about their families:

Ilan kayo sa pamilya?	<i>How many are you in the family?</i>
Pang-ilan ka/kayo?	<i>Where is your place in the family (the order)?</i>
Nasaan ang mga kapatid mo/ninyo?	<i>Where are your siblings?</i>

Nasa Maynila.	<i>In Manila.</i>
Marami/kaunti kami.	<i>We are many/few (in number).</i>
Malaki ang pamilya mo.	<i>You have a big family.</i>
Tatlo ang may asawa.	<i>Three are married.</i>
Dalawa ang binata.	<i>Two are single (males).</i>
Isa ang dalaga.	<i>One is single (female).</i>
Dalaga pa siya?	<i>Is she still single?</i>
May mga pamangkin ka?	<i>Do you have nieces and nephews?</i>
Wala pa.	<i>None yet.</i>
Ilan ang may asawa?	<i>How many are married?</i>
May apo na sila.	<i>They already have a grandchild.</i>
Nasaan ang nanay/tatay mo?	<i>Where is your mother/father?</i>
Nasaan ang mga kapatid mo?	<i>Where are your siblings?</i>
Ang ganda ng ate mo.	<i>Your older sister is pretty.</i>
Ang guwapo ng kuya mo.	<i>Your older brother is handsome.</i>

### 3E. CULTURE NOTE 1

For Filipinos, the concept of a family is almost always an extended one—it involves not just the nuclear family but also a whole network of relatives (*kamag-anak*) of grandparents, aunts, uncles, cousins, etc., some of them only related by marriage. Often, it even goes beyond blood relations. Even close family friends can be considered part of the family and are honored with familial titles such as *ate* (older sister) or *kuya* (older brother), *pinsan* (cousin), *tito* (uncle), or *tita* (aunt). This concept may translate into situations where close or distant relatives live or stay with a family for a period of time. This also probably accounts for the scarcity of orphanages and retirement homes in the Philippines.

### 3F. GRAMMAR

#### Plural Markers *mga* and *sina*

To express nouns in the plural form, the article *mga* (pronounced as “ma-nга”) is always used before the noun:

<b>kapatid</b>	<i>sibling</i>	<b>mga kapatid</b>	<i>siblings</i>
<b>dalaga</b>	<i>bachelorette</i>	<b>mga dalaga</b>	<i>bachelorettes</i>
<b>binata</b>	<i>bachelor</i>	<b>mga binata</b>	<i>bachelors</i>
<b>babae</b>	<i>woman</i>	<b>mga babae</b>	<i>women</i>
<b>lalaki</b>	<i>man</i>	<b>mga lalaki</b>	<i>men</i>

The plural of the article *si* is *sina*:

**Sina Flor at Bobby**

**Sina Ricardo at Willy**

## Adjectives

Many Tagalog adjectives are a combination of the prefix *ma-* and a base word.

*ma + ganda* (base word meaning “beauty”) = *maganda* (nice, beautiful)

Others do not start with the prefix *ma-*. For example, *bata* (young). Observe the following adjectives commonly used to describe people:

<b>matanda</b>	<i>old</i>
<b>bata</b>	<i>young</i>
<b>matangkad</b>	<i>tall</i>
<b>maliit</b>	<i>short, small</i>
<b>malaki</b>	<i>big</i>
<b>marami</b>	<i>many</i>
<b>kaunti</b>	<i>few</i>
<b>maganda</b>	<i>beautiful, nice</i>
<b>guwapo</b>	<i>handsome</i>
<b>pangit</b>	<i>ugly</i>
<b>mabuti</b>	<i>fine, good (condition)</i>
<b>mabait</b>	<i>good, kind</i>
<b>masama</b>	<i>bad</i>
<b>mataba</b>	<i>fat</i>
<b>payat</b>	<i>thin</i>
<b>maputi</b>	<i>light-skinned</i>

**maitim** *dark-skinned*

**matalino** *smart*

To describe singular nouns and pronouns, place the adjective at the beginning of the sentence, before the pronoun or noun:

**Maganda ka.**

*You're beautiful.*

**Matalino ang bata.**

*The child is smart.*

**Matangkad si Elena.**

*Elena is tall.*

To form the plural of *ma-* adjectives, the first two letters of the base word are repeated:

**Magaganda kayo.**

*You (plural) are beautiful.*

**Matatalino ang mga bata.**

*The children are smart.*

**Matatangkad sina Elena at Rose.**

*Elena and Rose are tall.*

Another common way to describe someone or something is to use the following construction:

**Ang + base of the adjective (without the prefix *ma-*) + NG pronoun**

**Ang bait nila**

*They're kind. ("How kind they are!")*

**Ang ganda niya**

*She's beautiful. ("How beautiful she is!")*

This is similar to the English expression "how XX you are" (think of what a grandmother says to her grandchildren: "My, how BIG you are!"), but it is used much more commonly in Tagalog. To form the plural in this expression, repeat the first two letters of the base word of the adjective:

**Ang gaganda nila.**

*They're beautiful. ("How beautiful they are!")*

**Ang papayat ninyo.**

*You (pl.) are thin. ("How thin you are!")*

**Ang babait namin.**

*We are kind/good. ("How kind we are!")*

## Using Numbers 1-20

Both Tagalog- and Spanish-derived words are used to express cardinal numbers, but it's important to know when to use which words. When counting, Tagalog is always used. When referring to people's ages after 10 years old, the Spanish words are often used, especially in spoken language. To express time, the Spanish-influenced words are always used.

<b>isa</b>	<b>uno</b>	<b>one</b>
<b>dalawa</b>	<b>dos</b>	<b>two</b>
<b>tatio</b>	<b>tres</b>	<b>three</b>
<b>apat</b>	<b>kuwatro</b>	<b>four</b>
<b>lima</b>	<b>sinko</b>	<b>five</b>
<b>anim</b>	<b>sais</b>	<b>six</b>
<b>pito</b>	<b>siyete</b>	<b>seven</b>
<b>walo</b>	<b>otso</b>	<b>eight</b>
<b>siyam</b>	<b>nuwebe</b>	<b>nine</b>
<b>sampu</b>	<b>diyes</b>	<b>ten</b>
<b>labing-isa</b>	<b>onse</b>	<b>eleven</b>
<b>labing-dalawa</b>	<b>dose</b>	<b>twelve</b>
<b>labing-tatio</b>	<b>trese</b>	<b>thirteen</b>
<b>labing-apat</b>	<b>katorse</b>	<b>fourteen</b>
<b>labing-lima</b>	<b>kinse</b>	<b>fifteen</b>
<b>labing-anim</b>	<b>diyesisais</b>	<b>sixteen</b>
<b>labing-pito</b>	<b>diyesisiyete</b>	<b>seventeen</b>
<b>labing-walo</b>	<b>diyesiotso</b>	<b>eighteen</b>
<b>labing-siyam</b>	<b>diyesinuwebe</b>	<b>nineteen</b>
<b>dalawampu</b>	<b>beynte</b>	<b>twenty</b>

## Ordinal numbers

una	<i>first</i>
pangalawa	<i>second</i>
pangatlo	<i>third</i>
pangapat	<i>fourth</i>
panglima	<i>fifth</i>
panganim	<i>sixth</i>
pangpito	<i>seventh</i>
pangwalo	<i>eighth</i>
pangsiyam	<i>ninth</i>
pangsamu	<i>tenth</i>

To ask someone's age in Tagalog, you will use the question *Ilang taon?*, which literally means "How many years . . . ?" and is usually followed with *na* (now, already).

**Ilang taon ka na?**

*How old are you now?*

The answer uses the Spanish-inspired numbers and the word *anyos* (from the Spanish *año*, meaning "year").

**Ilang taon ka na? Beynte anyos.**

*How old are you? Twenty years old.*

**Ilang taon na ang nanay mo? Sesenta.**

*How old is your mother? Sixty.*

**Ilang taon na kayo? Kuwarenta na kami.**

*How old are you now? We're already forty.*

## Linkers with Adjectives, Numbers, and SA Pronouns

Linkers are used in Tagalog to modify nouns with adjectives. The linker in Tagalog has two forms: *-ng* and *na*. Which form is used depends on whether the first word in the adjective-noun pair ends in a vowel or a consonant. For example, consider the adjective-noun pair below:

**maganda beautiful (adjective)      babae woman (noun)**

Because the first word in this adjective-noun pair, *maganda*, ends in a vowel, we use the linker *-ng* as follows:

**magandang babae**

***beautiful woman***

## Ordinal numbers

una	<i>first</i>
pangalawa	<i>second</i>
pangatlo	<i>third</i>
pangapat	<i>fourth</i>
panglima	<i>fifth</i>
panganim	<i>sixth</i>
pangpito	<i>seventh</i>
pangwalo	<i>eighth</i>
pangsiyam	<i>ninth</i>
pangsampu	<i>tenth</i>

To ask someone's age in Tagalog, you will use the question *Ilang taon?*, which literally means "How many years . . . ?" and is usually followed with *na* (now, already).

**Ilang taon ka na?**

*How old are you now?*

The answer uses the Spanish-inspired numbers and the word *anyos* (from the Spanish *año*, meaning "year").

**Ilang taon ka na? Beynte anyos.**

*How old are you? Twenty years old.*

**Ilang taon na ang nanay mo? Sesenta.**

*How old is your mother? Sixty.*

**Ilang taon na kayo? Kuwarenta na kami.**

*How old are you now? We're already forty.*

## Linkers with Adjectives, Numbers, and SA Pronouns

Linkers are used in Tagalog to modify nouns with adjectives. The linker in Tagalog has two forms: *-ng* and *na*. Which form is used depends on whether the first word in the adjective-noun pair ends in a vowel or a consonant. For example, consider the adjective-noun pair below:

**maganda beautiful (adjective)      babae woman (noun)**

Because the first word in this adjective-noun pair, *maganda*, ends in a vowel, we use the linker *-ng* as follows:

**magandang babae**

***beautiful woman***

So when the first word in the adjective-noun pair ends in a vowel, we add the linker-*ng* onto the end of the word. If, however, the first word in the adjective-noun pair ends in a consonant, then the linker *na* is used, and it is written as a separate word in between the adjective and the noun:

**maliit short (adjective)**

**babae woman (noun)**

**maliit na babae**

**short woman**

The word order in these adjective-noun constructions can be reversed, without changing its meaning. It is important to note that the linker is always attached to the first word that occurs in the adjective-noun (or noun-adjective) pair, regardless of whether it is the adjective or the noun.

<b>adjective-noun pair:</b>	
<b>magandang babae</b>	<b>beautiful woman</b>
<b>maliit na babae</b>	<b>short woman</b>
<b>noun-adjective pair:</b>	
<b>babaeng maganda</b>	<b>beautiful woman</b>
<b>babaeng maliit</b>	<b>short woman</b>

Linkers are also used to modify a noun with numbers, both cardinal and ordinal. In these constructions, the number must always precede the noun being modified. Consequently, since the number is always the first word in the number-noun pair, the linker is always attached to the number.

**dalawang kapatid**

***two siblings***

**tatlong pamangkin**

***three nieces and nephews***

**anim na pinsan**

***five cousins***

**apat na anak**

***four children/offspring***

**unang asawa**

***first spouse***

**pangalawang kapatid**

***second sibling***

**panganim na taon**

***sixth year***

**pangapat na taon**

***fourth year***

Finally, you can use linkers with SA pronouns to express possession. In this kind of possessive construction, the SA pronoun must always precede the noun that is possessed. Therefore, the linker always attaches to the SA pronoun:

**aking bahay**

***my house***

**kaniyang asawa**

***his/her spouse***

**aming anak**

***our (excl.) children***

## **Determining Location with *Nasaan* and *Nasa***

To ask the location of someone or something, another question word, *nasaan*, is used (as opposed to *saan*, which is used to ask for the location of an action, as in *Saan ka pupunta?*, “Where are you going?”).

**Nasaan ka?**

*Where are you (familiar, singular)?*

**Nasaan si Joel?**

*Where is Joel?*

**Nasaan ang mga kapatid mo?**

*Where are your siblings?*

To answer these questions, use the preposition *nasa*:

**Nasa bahay ako.**

*I'm home.*

**Nasa Makati siya.**

*He is in Makati.*

**Nasa trabaho sila.**

*They're at work.*

## **3G. READING**

The following excerpt from a poem about the plight of an overseas Filipino worker (OFW) and his or her family contains many words that you are familiar with at this point. Try to piece together the meaning of the poem. Refer to the Glossary for words that you do not understand.

**Sa Anak ng OFW**

**Bata, bata**

**Nasaan ang tatay mo?**

**Nasa Saudi, Sydney, Kuwait o Tate?**

**Bata, bata**

**Nasaan ang nanay mo?**

**Nasa Espanya, Hongkong, London, Italiya o Brunei?**

**Bata, bata**

**Wari ko pilit ang ngiti mo**

**Kahit bago ang damit mo.**

**Wari ko may lumbay sa puso mo**

**Kahit puno ang sikmura mo.**

*Little child, little child  
Where is your father?  
In Saudi, Sydney, Kuwait, or the States?*

*Little child, little child  
Where is your mother?  
In Spain, Hong Kong, London, Italy, or Brunei?*

*Little child, little child  
Your smile seems forced to me  
Even as you're wearing new clothes  
It seems to me there's sadness in your heart  
Even if your stomach is full.*

### **3H. CULTURE NOTE 2**

Overseas Filipino workers (OFWs) have come to be an integral part of modern-day Philippine reality. Hailed as the *bagong bayani* (new heroes), they contribute billions of dollars annually to the Philippine economy. Today, there are an estimated seven million Filipinos, around 10 percent of the current total population, working as skilled laborers and professionals in other countries. Their cultural adaptability and facility with English and other foreign languages make them the third most mobile community after the Chinese and the Indians. Most Filipino families have relatives or family members who have left home to work abroad to pursue a better life not only for themselves, but more importantly for their families. This massive dispersal of Filipinos abroad, now dubbed as the Filipino Diaspora, is a phenomenon that also has been a cause for concern. The price of economic betterment has both separated families and drained the country of what it considers its greatest natural resource—its people.

To read more about the OFW experience, visit the following websites:

[maxpages.com/bagongbayani](http://maxpages.com/bagongbayani)

[www.marcellinetaylor.com/manilagirl](http://www.marcellinetaylor.com/manilagirl)

## EXERCISES

A. Look for Tagalog words that refer to family members:

A	O	K	A	P	A	T	I	D	P
A	N	A	K	I	T	A	L	I	A
L	O	G	A	T	E	T	O	R	M
B	L	A	P	E	R	A	L	I	A
U	K	U	Y	A	P	O	O	T	N
N	P	I	N	S	M	N	L	A	G
S	A	S	A	W	A	I	L	T	K
O	P	I	N	S	A	N	L	A	I
L	O	L	A	P	I	E	S	Y	N
A	T	I	Y	O	K	A	T	E	A

B. Fill in each blank with the right question word from the list.

*ilan*   *saan*   *pang-ilan*   *nasaan*   *sino*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ang kapitid mo? –Apat. Isang babae at tatlong lalaki.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ ka pupunta? –Sa eskwela.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ si John? –Tiyo ko.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ ang mga pinsan mo? –Nasa bahay.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ka sa pamilya? –Pangalawa.

C. Numbers: Write the next word in the sequence.

1. isa, dalawa, tatlo, \_\_\_\_\_
2. anim, pito, walo, \_\_\_\_\_
3. trese, katorse, kinse, \_\_\_\_\_
4. pangapat, panglima, panganim, \_\_\_\_\_
5. labingpito, labingwalo, labingsiyam, \_\_\_\_\_

D. Change the following sentences into the plural form:

1. Matanda siya. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Maganda ako. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Matangkad ka. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Maliit ako. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Mabait siya. \_\_\_\_\_

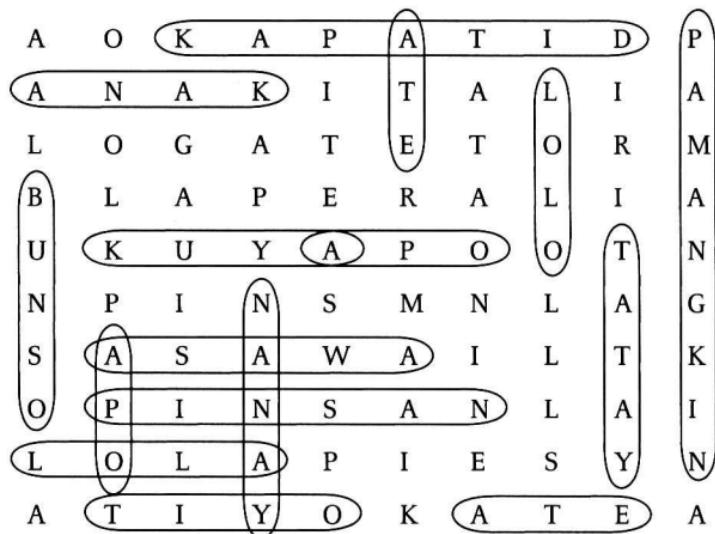
## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. b) *lima*    2. a) *pangatlo*    3. a) young    4. *Kapatid* means "sibling."  
5. *Nanay at tatay* means "mother and father."

### Exercises

A.



B. 1. ilan    2. saan    3. sino    4. nasaan    5. pang-ilan

C. 1. apat    2. siyam    3. diyesisais    4. pangpito    5. dalawampu

D. 1. Matatanda sila.    2. Magaganda kami/tayo.    3. Matatangkad kayo.  
4. Maliliit kami/tayo.    5. Mababait sila.

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: "ANG PAMILYA KO"

In your Tagalog journal, create your family tree and label each person's relation to you. Then write a description of your family, describing individual members with as much detail as you can. Use as many words and expressions that you have learned from this lesson.

# LESSON

# 4

*Tuloy kayo!*

Come in!

Lesson 4 focuses on the home. You will learn new vocabulary and expressions relating to welcoming someone into your home. You will also become familiar with expressing “to like” or “to want,” more Tagalog grammatical markers, and the basics of using verbs in Tagalog, with a focus on verb roots and aspects. Let’s start with a vocabulary warm-up!

## 4A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

**Tao po!**

*An expression used to announce that there’s someone at the door (tao, “person/people”).*

**Tuloy ka/kayo.**

*Come in.*

**Salamat pero . . .**

*Thanks, but . . .*

**Gusto ko . . .**

*I like . . .*

**Halika.**

*Come on.*

**Pasyensiya ka na.**

*An expression of apology equivalent to “I’m sorry.”*

**Kumain ka muna.**

*Eat first.*

**Dalaw ka ulit.**

*Come visit again.*

## 4B. DIALOGUE

Myrna and her family have just moved to a new townhouse in the outskirts of Manila. Her friend Ricky drops by unexpectedly to see her new place.

**Ricky:** Tao po!

**Myrna:** Hoy, Ricky! Tuloy ka!

Ricky: Wow, ang ganda ng bagong bahay ninyo, ha? Ang laki ng sala!

Myrna: Kasi hindi kumpleto ng muwebles. Upo. Meryenda ka muna.

Ricky: Salamat pero kumain na ako. Gusto ko lang dumalaw sa bagong bahay mo.

Myrna: Pasyensiya ka na at medyo makalat. Ito ang kusina, medyo maliit. Ang komedor maliit din.

Ricky: Tama lang. Mahilig ka pala sa berde. Ilan ang kuwarto?

Myrna: Dalawa. Halika, akyat tayo . . . Ito kuwarto namin.

Ricky: Ang ganda ng kama! Gusto ko ang kulay.

Myrna: Oo, pero ayaw ni Nick ng pula. Ang kuwarto ng mga bata, asul naman. Ah, tingnan mo, diyan sa likod ang hardin. Halika, baba tayo.

Ricky: Presko dito, tahimik pa . . . Myrna, sige, tutuloy na ko.

Myrna: Ayaw mo talaga ng meryenda?

Ricky: Hindi na lang, salamat. May lakad pa ako.

Myrna: O sige, Ricky. Dalaw ka ulit, ha?

Ricky: Sige. Magkita ulit tayo!

*Ricky: Anybody home?*

*Myrna: Hey, Ricky! Come in!*

*Ricky: Wow, your new house is very nice! The living room is big!*

*Myrna: It's because it doesn't have enough furniture yet. Sit down. Have a snack.*

*Ricky: Thanks but I've eaten already. I just want to visit your new house.*

*Myrna: Sorry it's a bit messy. Here's the kitchen; it's a little small. The dining room is pretty small, too.*

*Ricky: It's just right. You like green, huh? How many bedrooms?*

*Myrna: Two. Come, let's go up... Here's our bedroom.*

*Ricky: What a nice bed! I like the color.*

*Myrna: Yeah, but Nick doesn't like red. The kids' room is blue. Oh, look, in the back is the garden. Come, let's go down.*

*Ricky: It's cool here, and quiet... Myrna, I'll be leaving now.*

*Myrna: You really don't want any snack?*

*Ricky: No, that's okay, thanks. I have to be somewhere.*

*Myrna: All right, Ricky. Come visit again, okay?*

*Ricky: Bye! Let's see each other again!*

## **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. As he knocks on the door of Myrna's house, Ricky says  
a) *Kamusta ka?*      b) *Magandang umaga!*      c) *Tao po!*
2. Myrna opens the door and says  
a) *Tuloy ka!*      b) *Upo ka.*      c) *Kain ka.*
3. When Myrna offers him a snack, Ricky responds with  
a) *Oo, sige.*      b) *Hindi, salamat.*      c) *Ang ganda!*
4. *Asul* is the color \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Halika* means \_\_\_\_\_.

## **4C. VOCABULARY**

<i>asul</i>	<i>blue</i>
<i>bahay</i>	<i>house</i>
<i>banyo</i>	<i>bathroom</i>
<i>berde</i>	<i>green</i>
<i>dilaw</i>	<i>yellow</i>
<i>hardin</i>	<i>garden</i>
<i>itim</i>	<i>black</i>
<i>kama</i>	<i>bed</i>

komedor	<i>dining room</i>
kulang	<i>incomplete</i>
kulay	<i>color</i>
kumpleto	<i>complete</i>
kusina	<i>kitchen</i>
kuwarto	<i>bedroom</i>
lamesa/mesa	<i>table</i>
maayos	<i>neat</i>
mahilig	<i>fond of</i>
maingay	<i>noisy</i>
mainit	<i>hot</i>
makalat	<i>messy</i>
malaki	<i>big</i>
maliit	<i>small</i>
medyo	<i>a bit</i>
muwebles	<i>furniture</i>
presko	<i>cool</i>
pula	<i>red</i>
puti	<i>white</i>
silya	<i>chair</i>
sopa	<i>sofa</i>
tahimik	<i>quiet</i>

## 4D. KEY PHRASES

Let's learn some phrases used by Filipinos to welcome someone into their homes and to respond to someone's gestures of hospitality.

Tuloy ka/kayo.	<i>Come in.</i>
Pasok ka/kayo.	<i>Come in.</i>
Kumain ka na?	<i>Have you eaten?</i>
Kumain na ako.	<i>I've already eaten.</i>
Busog pa ako.	<i>I'm still full.</i>

Gusto mo/ninyo ng ... ?	<i>Do you like/want ... ?</i>
Gusto ko ...	<i>I like/want ...</i>
Ayaw ko ...	<i>I don't like/want ...</i>
Salamat pero ...	<i>Thanks but ...</i>
Pasyensiya ka na./ Pasyensiya na kayo.	<i>My apologies.</i>
Nakakahiya naman.	<i>It's rather embarrassing.</i>
Dalaw ka/kayo ulit.	<i>Come visit again.</i>
Balik ka/kayo.	<i>Come back.</i>
Tutuloy na ako.	<i>I'll be leaving now.</i>
Magkita ulit tayo!	<i>Let's see each other again!</i>

## 4E. CULTURE NOTE 1

The following is a typical scene in Filipino homes: An unexpected guest arrives and receives a warm welcome. The host drops everything and immediately thinks, “What can I offer him? How about a meal? A light snack? At least a drink?” The guest doesn’t want to impose and politely declines. He has eaten. He’s not hungry; he’s full. He needs to leave soon. He is not supposed to say yes to the first invitation anyway, as that would be a bit impolite. The host repeats the offer moments later. “Are you sure? Have some food, please. *Kumain ka muna.*” At this point, the guest either regretfully declines (and risks offending the host, who may in turn give a third invitation) or finally obliges. Food, drink, or both is served perhaps peppered with apologies: “*Pasyensiya ka na*, this is all I can offer.” Hospitality, the Filipino way.

## 4F. GRAMMAR

### Expressing “to Like” or “to Want”

There is a group of verbs in Tagalog that can be called “pseudo” verbs. While they function as verbs, in reality they are not verbs but expressions. They do not change their form and, therefore, are easier to learn. Two examples of this are the words *gusto*, used to express “to like” and “to want,” and *ayaw*, used to express the opposite—“to dislike” or “to not want.” Notice their usage in the following examples:

**Gusto mo? Oo, gusto ko.**  
**Do you want/like? Yes, I want/like.**

**Gusto mo? Ayaw ko (Ayoko).**  
*Do you want? No, I don't want.*

**Hindi nila gusto dito/Ayaw nila dito.**  
*They don't like it here.*

**Gusto niya? Hindi, ayaw niya.**  
*Does he/she like? No, he/she doesn't like.*

You may have noticed that *gusto* uses the NG pronouns from Lesson 2 to indicate the subject doing the liking/wanting. The NG pronouns, apart from indicating possession, are also used to mark the object of a sentence. Essentially, in the case of *gusto* and other verbs that are similar to it, they do not indicate **who** likes or wants but roughly **by whom** something is liked or wanted:

**Gusto ko ang sala.**  
*Liked by me the living room.*

To make this sentence negative, *hindi* is placed at the beginning, followed by the pronoun, and then *gusto*.

**Hindi ko gusto sa Makati.**  
*I don't like (it) in Makati.*

The word *ayaw* (to not like/want) also expresses the negative of *gusto* and functions in the same way. The first person singular form is often shortened to *ayoko* (*ayaw + ko*).

**Ayaw mo?**  
*You don't like/want (it)?*

**Ayoko.**  
*I don't like/want (it).*

One last note about *gusto*—it is derived from the Spanish verb “*gustar*” (to like). There are words in Tagalog to express “to like/want” (*ibig* and *nais*), but they are not used commonly in everyday speech, except for *ibig* when used to express “to mean” (*ibig sabihin*). You will, however, come across these words in written texts, especially in literary works and song lyrics.

**Ano'ng ibig mong sabihin?**  
*What do you want to say/mean?*

**Nais ko ng malaking bahay.**  
*I want a big house.*

### **The Grammatical Markers *ng* and *ni***

The grammatical markers *ng* and *ni* (and their plural forms *ng mga* and *nina*) have several functions in Tagalog. One function of *ng* and *ni* is to mark the possessor in a possessive construction, equivalent to the English “of.” Let’s look at how this works in the following examples:

ang hardin ng bahay  
*the garden of the house*

ang kulay ng sala  
*the color of the living room*

ang kuwarto ng mga bata  
*the room of the children*

ang kama ni Jenny  
*the bed of Jenny*

In sentences with *gusto* or *ayaw*, *ng* marks the object of the verb if the object is an indefinite one.

**Gusto ko ng bahay sa Laguna.**  
*I want a house in Laguna.*

**Ayaw ko ng puting kusina.**  
*I don't like a white kitchen.*

**Nais ko ng magandang asawa.**  
*I want a pretty spouse.*

## Sentence Structure and Verb Roots

Before we begin to learn Tagalog verbs, let's start by reviewing word order in Tagalog sentences. As we saw in Lesson 1, in spoken Tagalog, the predicate generally comes before the subject, which is the reverse of English sentences.

**Malaki ang bahay.**  
*Big the house.*

*The house is big.*

This also applies in sentences where the predicate is a verb:

**Pupunta ako sa bahay mo.**  
*Will go I to house your.*

*I will go to your house.*

**Kain ka muna.**  
*Eat you first.*

*(You) Eat first.*

The first step toward mastery of Tagalog verbs is to familiarize yourself with (or to learn) as many verb roots as possible. If you look up a Tagalog verb in a dictionary, you will find the verbs in this basic form. In the dialogue, you heard some examples of verb roots:

**tuloy** *continue, go on*

**akyat** *come up, go up*

**baba** *come down, go down*

**upo**

*sit*

**dalaw**

*visit*

Some verb roots can be used with pronouns to form affirmative commands.

**Tuloy ka.**

*Come in.*

**Akyat tayo.**

*Let's go up.*

**Baba kayo.**

*Go down. (pl.)*

**Upo ka.**

*Sit down. (sing.)*

**Dalaw kayo.**

*Visit. (pl.)*

Here are some other verb roots expressing a few common actions:

<b>kain</b>	<i>eat</i>
<b>inom</b>	<i>drink</i>
<b>punta</b>	<i>go</i>
<b>lakad</b>	<i>walk</i>
<b>labas</b>	<i>go out</i>
<b>pasok</b>	<i>enter</i>

## **The Infinitive of -um- Verbs**

There are several different types of Tagalog verbs, grouped according to an affix class. An “affix” is an element added to a word to change its form. In this lesson, we will just focus on the first group of verbs, called *-um-* verbs. The verb roots we examined above belong to this class of verbs because they use the affix *-um-*.

It is important at this point to learn the different forms of verbs according to “aspects” (similar to tenses in English). In Tagalog grammar, the different aspects are:

**Completed aspect** — expresses past action

**Contemplated aspect** — expresses future action

**Incomplete aspect** — expresses progressive action

We'll see examples of how to form the different aspects of Tagalog verbs in Lesson 5.

There is also a form of the verb that does not imply any aspect; this form is called the neutral or infinitive form. In English, this form is expressed with the preposition “to,” as in “to eat,” “to talk,” and “to write.” Let’s now learn the infinitive form, as it is useful in many ways.

The infinitive of *-um-* verbs is constructed by placing *-um-* before the first vowel of the verb root. Observe the change from the root to the infinitive form in the following examples:

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE
tuloy	<b>tumuloy</b>
akyat	<b>umakyat</b>
baba	<b>bumaba</b>
upo	<b>umupo</b>
dalaw	<b>dumalaw</b>
kain	<b>kumain</b>
lakad	<b>lumakad</b>

The infinitive form of *-um-* verbs is also used with ANG pronouns to form commands:

**Dumalaw ka.**

*Visit. (sing.)*

**Kumain kayo.**

*Eat. (pl.)*

**Umupo tayo.**

*Let's sit.*

With this form, you can also express completed (past) actions of *-um-* verbs.

**Kumain siya.**

*He/She ate.*

**Umakyat sila.**

*They went up.*

**Umupo ako.**

*I sat.*

**Bumaba kayo.**

*You (pl.) went/came down.*

Infinitives are also used with modal verbs (such as the Tagalog equivalents of *want*, *like*, *must*, *can*, *need*, etc.). We will look at these in a later lesson.

## 4G. READING

Read through the following home safety tips and look for the *-um-* verbs, most of them expressing commands. Underline them and try to figure out the verb root for each one by dropping *-um-*. Keep a list of those verbs you are not familiar with to look up in a dictionary later on.

### **Ligtas ba ang bahay mo?**

Itong ay ilang mga payo at paalala upang panatiliing lixtas ang bahay mo.

- Bumili ng First-Aid kit para sa bahay at sa kotse.
- Ilagay ang telepono na malapit sa kama o kung saan namamalagi.
- Siguraduhing may mga numerong pang-emerhensiya na madaling mahanap.
- Gumamit ng mga ilaw na panggabi upang ilawan ang dinadaanan sa dilim.
- Huwag umakyat at bumaba sa hagdanan na may dala-dala na makakahadlang sa paningin.
- Panatiliing walang kalat o anumang hadlang ang mga hagdanan at mga nilalakaran sa loob at labas ng bahay.
- Iwasang umalis sa kusina habang nagluluto.
- Huwag iwanan ang nakasinding kandila lalo na kapag may bata sa kuwarto.
- Bumili at magkabit ng mga alarma sa usok at palaging suriin kung gumagana ang mga ito.
- Turuan ang lahat sa pamilya na “tumigil, dumapa at gumulong” sa sahig kung nasusunog ang damit.
- Gumawa ng planong pagtakas kung sakaling magkasunog at pumili ng isang lugar sa labas ng bahay kung saan puwedeng magtipon-tipon pagkatapos ng pagtakas.

### **Is Your Home Safe?**

*Here are some tips and reminders to help keep your home safe.*

- *Buy a First-Aid kit for the house and the car.*
- *Place a phone by the bed or in the place where you are most often.*
- *Make sure you have emergency phone numbers where you can easily find them.*

- Use a night-light to illuminate passageways in the dark.
- Don't go up and down the stairs carrying things that could obstruct your vision.
- Keep stairs and passageways in and outside the house free of clutter.
- Avoid leaving the kitchen while cooking.
- Don't leave a candle burning, especially if there is a child in the room.
- Buy and install smoke alarms and periodically check to see that they are working.
- Teach everyone in the family to "stop, drop, and roll" on the floor if clothes catch fire.
- Make an escape plan in case of fire and choose a meeting place after the escape.

#### **4H. CULTURE NOTE 2**

The iconic Filipino home is the *bahay kubo* (hut house), a hut made of bamboo and palm fronds. These *bahay kubo* are still visible in the countryside and celebrated in both music and art. In Spanish colonial times, with the novel addition of stone as a material, they would evolve into the *bahay na bato* (stone house), which is grander and sturdier than the *bahay kubo* but maintains many of the same features of its humble predecessor. Both are designed to blend in well with the tropical surroundings and the climate, as well as with the Filipino's concept of personal space. There are modern deviations from this archetype, as one might readily see in any residential area, with high-rise apartment buildings, sleek townhouses, and Western-inspired houses of every style. Whatever the style, for Filipinos, the dwelling place is a communal space to be shared with others. Personal privacy is still considered to be somewhat of a Western indulgence, the opposite of hospitality. There is an old Tagalog saying: *Aanhin mo ang palasyo kung ang nakatira ay kuwago; mabuti pa ang bahay kubo ang nakatira ay tao* (What is the use of a palace with an owl dwelling in it? Better is a hut where a person dwells.). The saying reflects the importance placed by the culture on people and their places of dwelling. To paraphrase: Better a welcoming house made of sticks than an inhospitable house of stone.

For more on the Filipino concept of space, visit [www.seasite.niu.edu/Tagalog/Tagalog\\_Default\\_files/art\\_news\\_and\\_features.htm](http://www.seasite.niu.edu/Tagalog/Tagalog_Default_files/art_news_and_features.htm).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*tuloy hindi meryenda hardin tao ganda*

A. \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_ po!

B. Jenny! \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ka!

A. Ang \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ng apartment mo!

B. Salamat! \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ka muna.

A. \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_, kumain na ako.

B. Halika, sa \_\_\_\_\_ (6) \_\_\_\_\_ tayo. Presko doon.

B. Fill in each blank with the infinitive form of the *-um-* verb in parentheses to express a command.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ tayo! (kain)

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ka! (pasok)

3. \_\_\_\_\_ kayo! (labas)

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ka! (inom)

5. \_\_\_\_\_ tayo! (akyat)

6. \_\_\_\_\_ kayo! (baba)

7. \_\_\_\_\_ ka! (dalaw)

C. Answer each question with *gusto* or *ayaw*.

1. Meryenda, gusto mo? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Pulang kuwarto, gusto ninyo? \_\_\_\_\_

3. Bagong muwebles, gusto nila? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Kain tayo, gusto mo? \_\_\_\_\_

5. Malaking bahay, gusto niya? \_\_\_\_\_

6. Maliit na hardin, gusto ninyo? \_\_\_\_\_

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) *Tao po!* 2. a) *Tuloy ka!* 3. b) *Hindi, salamat.* 4. *Asul* is the color blue.  
5. *Halika* means “come” or “let’s go.”

### Exercises

- A. 1. *tao* 2. *tuloy* 3. *ganda* 4. *meryenda* 5. *hindi* 6. *hardin*
- B. 1. *kumain* 2. *pumasok* 3. *lumabas* 4. *uminom* 5. *umakyat*  
6. *bumaba* 7. *dumalaw*
- C. 1. *Oo, gusto ko./Hindi, ayaw ko* (or *ayoko*). 2. *Oo, gusto namin./Hindi, ayaw namin.* 3. *Oo, gusto nila./Hindi, ayaw nila.* 4. *Oo, gusto ko./Hindi, ayaw ko* (or *ayoko*). 5. *Oo, gusto niya./Hindi, ayaw niya.* 6. *Oo, gusto namin./Hindi, ayaw namin.*

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

Imagine that you’ve invited a Filipino friend to your home. Try to make this person feel welcome and show him or her around, impressing him or her with your Tagalog! Create a dialogue between yourself and this person, and write it in your journal. You may extend this challenge to real life by inviting a Tagalog speaker to your home! You may also want to create a list of all the *-um-* verbs you have learned from this lesson in your journal and use each of them in your own original sentences. You can build on this list as you learn more verbs.

# LESSON

# 5

*Tanghali na!*

It's late!

This lesson is about daily routines. Here, you will learn another group of Tagalog verbs and be able to express different tenses of these verbs and others that you already know. You will also be able to tell time in Tagalog. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up!

## 5A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Ano'ng oras na?	<i>What time is it?</i>
Sandali lang.	<i>Just a moment./Just a second.</i>
Alam mo . . . ?	<i>Do you know . . . ?</i>
Bakit?	<i>Why?</i>
Tanghali na.	<i>It's late.</i>
Huli ako.	<i>I'm late.</i>
Siyempre.	<i>Of course.</i>
kahit	<i>even though, although</i>

## 5B. DIALOGUE

Cynthia and Gary are coworkers on their lunch break, having a conversation about their daily routine.

Cynthia: Ano'ng oras na?

Gary: Halos ala-una. Halika, bumalik na tayo.

Cynthia: Sandali lang. Kumakain pa ko. Alam mo ba, huli na naman ako kaninang umaga?

Gary: Bakit? Ano'ng oras ka ba gumigising?

Cynthia: Mga alas-sais.

Gary: Kahit gumigising ka ng maaga, huli ka pa rin? Ano'ng oras ka umaalis ng bahay?

Cynthia: Tanghali na, palagi kasi marami kami sa bahay. Siyempre gumagamit lahat ng banyo.

Gary: Sa gabi ka maghanda.

Cynthia: Puwede rin. Ngayon kasi dumarating ako sa bahay gabi na, dahil gumagawa pa ako ng mga report. Tapos pagod na ako. Wala na nga akong oras maghapanan.

Gary: Ako sa gabi din naghahanda: nagplaplantsa, nag ...

Cynthia: Ay, pasado ala-una na! Balik na tayo.

Cynthia: *What time is it?*

Gary: *Almost one o'clock. Come on, let's go back now.*

Cynthia: *Just a second. I'm still eating. Do you know, I was late again this morning?*

Gary: *Why? What time do you get up?*

Cynthia: *Around six.*

Gary: *Even though you wake up early, you're still late? What time do you leave the house?*

Cynthia: *(It's) late, because there are always a lot of us at home. Of course, everyone uses the bathroom.*

Gary: *Prepare everything at night.*

Cynthia: *I can do that. But I get home late because I do the reports. Then I'm already tired. I don't even have time to have dinner.*

Gary: *I do things at night too: I iron, I ...*

Cynthia: *Oh, it's already past one! Let's go back.*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. The first question Cynthia asks Gary is

- a) *Saan ka pupunta?*      b) *Kamusta ka?*      c) *Ano'ng oras na?*

2. Cynthia tells Gary that she wakes up at  
 a) *Mga alas-singko*      b) *Mga alas-sais*      c) *Mga alas-siyete*
3. Cynthia says she leaves the house to go to work  
 a) late      b) early      c) just in time
4. *Tanghali na* means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Siyempre* means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 5C. VOCABULARY

dahil	<i>because</i>
gumagamit ( <i>root</i> gamit)	<i>using, uses</i>
gumawa ( <i>root</i> gawa)	<i>made</i>
gumising ( <i>root</i> gising)	<i>woke up, wake up (infinitive)</i>
halos	<i>almost</i>
hapunan ( <i>noun</i> )/ maghapunan ( <i>verb</i> )	<i>dinner, have dinner</i>
huli	<i>last, late</i>
humanda ( <i>root</i> handa)	<i>prepared, get ready</i>
kaninang umaga	<i>this morning</i>
lahat	<i>all</i>
maaga	<i>early</i>
magplantsa ( <i>root</i> plantsa)	<i>to iron</i>
na naman	<i>again</i>
oras	<i>time, hours</i>
pagod	<i>tired</i>
palagi	<i>always</i>
plantsa	<i>iron</i>
tanghali	<i>late (referring to time)</i>

## 5D. KEY PHRASES

The following are some words and phrases that can be used to talk about one's daily routine:

- Ano'ng oras ka/kayo...**      *What time do you...*  
 ... **gumigising?\***      ... *wake up?*

\*You'll learn the verb roots of some of the verbs used in this list in the grammar section. For the rest, refer to the glossary.

... umaalis ng bahay?	... leave the house?
... dumarating?	... arrive?
... naghahanda?	... prepare?
... nag-aayos?	... prepare yourself/get ready?
... gumagamit ng banyo	... use the bathroom?
... naghihilamos?	... wash (your) face?
... nagsesepilyo?	... brush your teeth?
... nag-aalmusal?	... have breakfast?
maaga	<i>early</i>
tanghali na	<i>late</i>
sa umaga	<i>in the morning</i>
sa tanghali	<i>at noon</i>
sa hapon	<i>in the afternoon</i>
sa gabi	<i>in the evening</i>

## 5E. CULTURE NOTE 1

Much has been said about the influence of Spanish on Tagalog and other Filipino languages and dialects. There are about 6,000 Spanish “loanwords” in Tagalog. Some of these words were assimilated into Tagalog without any change in meaning, such as *pero* (but) and *oras* (from *horas*, hours). Others are mere derivations and have acquired either a slightly or a totally different meaning in Tagalog. *Siyempre* (from the Spanish *siempre* = always) means “of course.” *Siguro* (from *seguro* = sure) is the word used for “perhaps.” The Spanish-derived words *gusto* and *puwede* (from the verbs *gustar* and *poder*, respectively) are used in spoken Tagalog more than their native counterparts (*nais*, *ibig* = to want/to like; *maari* = to be able to). Tagalog has, in turn, enriched the Spanish language. The Dictionary of the Royal Academy of the Spanish language lists dozens of lexical borrowings from Tagalog, such as *paipay* (fan), *dalaga* (young lady), *bata* (child), *timba* (pail), *babaidor* (womanizer), etc.

## 5F. GRAMMAR

### The Incomplete (Present) and Contemplated (Future) Aspect of **-um-** Verbs

So far in this lesson, you have already learned six more **-um-** verb roots:

balik	<i>to return</i>
gising	<i>to wake up</i>
alis	<i>to leave</i>
gamit	<i>to use</i>
gawa	<i>to make</i>
dating	<i>to come, to arrive</i>

You have learned how to express the neutral form (infinitive) and completed aspect (past) of these verbs. Now let's use these new verbs to learn how to form the contemplated aspect (future action) and incomplete aspect (present tense) of **-um-** verbs.

The contemplated aspect of **-um-** verbs is formed by duplicating the first syllable of the verb root.

VERB ROOT	CONTEMPLATED ASPECT	MEANING
balik	<b>babalik</b>	<i>will go back</i>
gising	<b>gigising</b>	<i>will wake up</i>
alis	<b>aalis</b>	<i>will leave</i>
gamit	<b>gagamit</b>	<i>will use</i>
gawa	<b>gagawa</b>	<i>will make</i>
dating	<b>darating*</b>	<i>will come/arrive</i>

\*Notice the spelling change.

**Gagawa kami ng project.**

*We will do a project.*

**Kailan siya babalik?**

*When will he/she come back?*

**Darating ang pinsan ko sa Lunes.**

*My cousin will arrive on Monday.*

The incomplete aspect of **-um-** verbs is formed by inserting **um** between the first consonant and the first vowel of the contemplated aspect forms above. If the first letter is a vowel, then **um** is simply placed at the beginning of the contemplated form of the verb.

VERB ROOT	INCOMPLETE ASPECT	MEANING
balik	bumabalik	goes back/is going back
gising	gumigising	wakes up/is waking up
alis	umaalis	leaves/is leaving
gamit	gumagamit	uses/is using
gawa	gumagawa	makes/is making
dating	dumarating	comes/is coming

Gumagamit kami ng computer.

*We use/are using a computer.*

Umaalis ako ng bahay sa umaga.

*I leave the house in the morning.*

Gumigising sila ng alas-siyete.

*They wake up at seven.*

### **Mag- Verbs**

Another group of Tagalog verbs is the *mag-* verbs. The following verb roots belong to this class of verbs; their infinitives are formed by adding the prefix *mag-* to the verb root.

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE	MEANING
salita	<b>magsalita</b>	<i>to speak/talk</i>
handa	<b>maghanda</b>	<i>to prepare</i>
hapunan	<b>maghapunan</b>	<i>to have dinner</i>
almusal	<b>mag-almusal</b>	<i>to have breakfast</i>
luto	<b>magluto</b>	<i>to cook</i>
laba	<b>maglaba</b>	<i>to wash (clothes)</i>
ayos	<b>mag-ayos</b>	<i>to fix or to get oneself ready</i>
hilamos	<b>maghilamos</b>	<i>to wash one's face</i>
sepilyo	<b>magsepilyo</b>	<i>to brush one's teeth</i>

The various aspects of *mag-* verbs are formed similarly to those of *-um-* verbs. Study the following chart showing the aspects of *mag-* verbs and notice the similarities and differences in the way aspects of the two types of verbs are formed:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>magsalita</b>	<b>nagsalita</b>	<b>magsasalita</b>	<b>nagsasalita</b>
<b>maghanda</b>	<b>naghanda</b>	<b>maghahanda</b>	<b>naghahanda</b>
<b>maghapanan</b>	<b>naghapanan</b>	<b>maghahapanan</b>	<b>naghahapanan</b>
<b>mag-almusal</b>	<b>nag-almusal</b>	<b>mag-aalmusal</b>	<b>nag-aalmusal</b>

Notice that in the completed and incomplete aspects, *mag* changes to *nag*.

**Nagsasalita na siya ng Tagalog.**  
*He's already speaking Tagalog.*

**Maghahapunan ka dito?**  
*Are you having dinner here?*

**Maghahanda ako ng almusal.**  
*I will prepare breakfast.*

**Gusto kong maglaba mamaya.**  
*I want to do the laundry later.*

## Telling Time

Tagalog speakers use English, Spanish, and Tagalog forms when telling time. Of these forms, Spanish is used most often in everyday speech, while Tagalog is used in formal settings. It is important to learn both when learning to tell time in Tagalog.

	SPANISH FORM	TAGALOG FORM
<b>1:00</b>	<b>ala-una</b>	<b>ika-isa</b>
<b>2:00</b>	<b>alas-dos</b>	<b>ikalawa</b>
<b>3:00</b>	<b>alas-tres</b>	<b>ikatlo</b>
<b>4:00</b>	<b>alas-kwatro</b>	<b>ika-apat</b>
<b>5:00</b>	<b>alas-singko</b>	<b>ika-lima</b>
<b>6:00</b>	<b>alas-sais</b>	<b>ika-anim</b>
<b>7:00</b>	<b>alas-siyete</b>	<b>ika-pito</b>
<b>8:00</b>	<b>alas-otso</b>	<b>ika-walo</b>
<b>9:00</b>	<b>alas-nuwebe</b>	<b>ika-siyam</b>
<b>10:00</b>	<b>alas-diyes</b>	<b>ika-sampu</b>
<b>11:00</b>	<b>alas-onse</b>	<b>ika-labing-isa</b>
<b>12:00</b>	<b>alas-dose</b>	<b>ika-labing-dalawa</b>

The following are also added to both the Tagalog and Spanish forms:

ng umaga	<i>in the morning (a.m.)</i>
ng tanghali	<i>noon</i>
ng hapon	<i>in the afternoon (p.m.)</i>
ng gabi	<i>in the evening (p.m.)</i>
ng hating-gabi	<i>midnight</i>

When using the Spanish form, minutes are also expressed in Spanish. For example:

12:05	<i>alas-dose singko</i>
12:10	<i>alas-dose diyes</i>
12:15	<i>alas-dose kinse</i>
12:30	<i>alas-dose y medya</i>
12:45	<i>alas-dose kwarenta y singko</i>

In the formal Tagalog form, minutes are expressed with the use of the word *makalipas* (past), and the minutes are mentioned first, before the hour:

6:05 a.m.	<i>limang minuto makalipas ang ika-anim ng umaga</i>
2:10 p.m.	<i>sampung minuto makalipas ang ikalawa ng hapon</i>
12:15 noon	<i>labing-limang minuto makalipas ang ika-labing-dalawa ng tanghali</i>

## 5G. READING

Read the following lyrics of two Tagalog songs—the first one a folk song about a place of pilgrimage and the second one an icebreaker song used for gatherings. Look for a couple of *-um-* and *mag-* verbs.

Tayo na sa Antipolo  
at doo'y maligo tayo  
sa batis na kung tawagin  
ay Hi-hi-hinulugang Taktak  
at doo'y kumain  
ng mangga  
kasuy at balimbing  
kaya't magmadali ka at  
tayo ay sumama sa Antipolo.

*Let's go to Antipolo  
And let's take a bath there  
In the stream that's called  
Hi-hi-hinulugang Taktak  
And there let's eat mangoes and  
Cashews and star fruits  
So hurry and  
Let's go to Antipolo.*

**Kamusta ka?**  
Halina't magsaya  
Ipalakpak ang kamay  
Ituro ang paa  
Padyak sa kanan  
Padyak sa kaliwa  
Umikot nang umikot  
at humanap ng iba.

*How are you?  
Come and be happy  
Clap your hands  
Point at your feet  
Stomp your right foot  
Stomp your left foot  
Turn around, turn around  
And look for someone else.*

## **5H. CULTURE NOTE 2**

The radio announcing “*Limang minuto po bago mag-alas tres ng hapon*” tells not only of how multilayered the Filipino language is but also of the hybrid quality of the Filipino concept of time. Pre-colonial Filipinos certainly would have perceived and expressed time very differently from their Western colonizers. They did not measure time in terms of the same categories of hours, minutes, and seconds, and perhaps understood time not so much as something linear, but as something circular. Still, these alien concepts have slowly but surely crept into their mindset and centuries later formed part of the Filipino concept of time. Filipinos may still answer the question *Ano'ng oras na?* with a vague *Maaga pa* (“It's still early”) or *Tanghali na* (“It's late”), or perhaps qualify it with a still imprecise *Mag-aalas-sais* (“It's going to be six o'clock”). They may even use the English form when precision is called for: “Five forty-two *na*.” This same kind of code-switching at which Filipinos are adept informs their view and practice of keeping time. “Filipino time” doesn't just mean starting a business meeting around half an

hour late or being fashionably late to a social gathering. "Filipino time" can just as easily mean being as punctual as the Swiss.

Doing business in the Philippines? To read more about Filipino business etiquette, visit [www.apmforum.com/columns/orientseas6.htm](http://www.apmforum.com/columns/orientseas6.htm).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*huli oras almusal banyo pagod tanghali*

A. Ano'ng \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_ na?

B. Alas-siyete.

A. Talaga? \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ na. \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ na ako sa trabaho.

B. Sige. Ikaw muna sa \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Salamat. Mag-\_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ka muna.

B. Write out the following times using the colloquial Spanish form.

1. 4:00 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ ng \_\_\_\_\_

2. 7:00 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ ng \_\_\_\_\_

3. 1:05 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ ng \_\_\_\_\_

4. 8:15 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ ng \_\_\_\_\_

5. 11:00 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ ng \_\_\_\_\_

6. 12:30 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ ng \_\_\_\_\_

7. 3:20 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ ng \_\_\_\_\_

C. Order the following daily activities according to a logical sequence:

\_\_\_\_\_ a. Darating sa trabaho

\_\_\_\_\_ b. Mag-aalmusal

\_\_\_\_\_ c. Babalik sa bahay

\_\_\_\_\_ d. Gigising

\_\_\_\_\_ e. Magtatrabaho

\_\_\_\_\_ f. Maghahapunan

\_\_\_\_\_ g. Aalis ng bahay

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) *Ano'ng oras na?* 2. b) *Mga alas-sais* 3. a) late 4. *Tanghali na* means "it's late." 5. *Siyempre* means "of course."

### Exercises

A. 1. oras 2. tanghali 3. huli 4. banyo 5. almusal

B. 1. alas-kuwatro ng hapon 2. alas-siyete ng umaga 3. ala-una singko ng hapon 4. alas-otso kinse ng umaga 5. alas-onse ng gabi 6. alas-dose y medya ng tanghali 7. alas-tres beynte ng hapon

C. a. 4 b. 2 c. 6 d. 1 e. 5 f. 7 g. 3

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

In your journal, write about your daily routine using *-um-* and *mag-* verbs in the incomplete aspect (present action). Additionally, write sentences expressing both what you did today and what you are going to do tomorrow. Then imagine a conversation with a Filipino friend in which you talk about your respective routines. Try putting all of this into practice by chatting with a Filipino friend online or in person.

# LESSON 6

*Mag-arat tayo!*

Let's study!

In this lesson, you will learn the phrases and vocabulary you'll need to talk about school. You will also become familiar with another group of Tagalog verbs, learn how to express "to know," and form negative sentences. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up!

## 6A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Ano'ng ginagawa mo?	<i>What are you doing?</i>
nag-aaral	<i>studying</i>
Para saan?	<i>What for?</i>
siguro	<i>perhaps</i>
Hindi ko alam.	<i>I don't know (a fact).</i>
Hindi ako marunong.	<i>I don't know (how to do something).</i>
bukas	<i>tomorrow</i>
kahapon	<i>yesterday</i>
malamang	<i>most likely</i>

## 6B. DIALOGUE

Mia and Allan are classmates at a university, and they're talking to each other on the phone during finals week. Let's listen in as they discuss their classes on the phone.

Mia: Ano'ng ginagawa mo?

Allan: Ito, nakikinig ng radyo habang nag-aaral para sa exam ko sa Biology bukas. Ikaw?

Mia: Nagbabasa para sa Chemistry.

Allan: May project din ako due bukas.

Mia: Para saan?

Allan: Para sa Psychology. Ang hirap ng topic ko, kaya siguro matatapos ako bukas na.

Mia: Kamusta ang test mo sa English kahapon?

Allan: Hindi ko alam. Pasado siguro. Hindi ako nag-aral pero madali lang ang mga tanong.

Mia: O sige na. Pupunta pa ako sa library para mag-research sa Internet. Nasira ang hard drive ko. Ah, sandali. Marunong kang mag-burn ng CD?

Allan: Hindi, sori. Okey, manonood muna ako ng TV. Napagod na ako sa kaka-aral. Pero siguro hindi ako matutulog ngayong gabi.

*Mia: What are you doing?*

*Allan: Just here, listening to the radio while studying for my Biology exam tomorrow. You?*

*Mia: Reading for Chemistry.*

*Allan: I also have a project due tomorrow.*

*Mia: For what?*

*Allan: For Psychology. My topic is hard, so I'll probably finish it tomorrow.*

*Mia: How was your English test yesterday?*

*Allan: I don't know. Maybe I passed. I didn't study but the questions were easy.*

*Mia: Okay, gotta go. I still have to go to the library to (do) research on the Internet. My hard drive broke. Oh, wait. Do you know how to burn a CD?*

*Allan: No, sorry. Okay, I'm going to watch some TV. I've gotten tired from studying. But most likely I won't sleep tonight.*

### **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. While studying for an exam, Allan is

- a) nakikinig ng radyo      b) nanonood ng TV      c) nagbabasa ng libro

2. When Allan asks Mia what she's doing, she says she is  
a) *kumakain*      b) *nagbabasa*      c) *nakikinig ng radyo*
3. About his English test, Allan says that it was  
a) *mahirap*      b) *madali*      c) *maganda*
4. *Tanong* means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Ano'ng ginagawa mo?* means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 6C. VOCABULARY

<b>bukas</b>	<i>tomorrow</i>
<b>habang</b>	<i>while</i>
<b>kahapon</b>	<i>yesterday</i>
<b>kaka-</b>	<i>a prefix denoting the action stated in the verb is tediously performed again and again or is continued for a long duration of time</i>
<b>kaya</b>	<i>that's why</i>
<b>manonood (root nood)</b>	<i>will watch</i>
<b>matutulog (root tulog)</b>	<i>will sleep</i>
<b>nakikinig (root kinig)</b>	<i>listens, is listening</i>
<b>napagod (root pagod)</b>	<i>got tired</i>
<b>nasira (root sira)</b>	<i>broke</i>
<b>ngayong gabi</b>	<i>this evening</i>
<b>ngayong hapon</b>	<i>this afternoon</i>
<b>ngayong tanghali</b>	<i>this noon</i>
<b>ngayong umaga</b>	<i>this morning</i>
<b>para</b>	<i>for, in order to</i>
<b>Para saan?</b>	<i>What for?</i>

## 6D. KEY PHRASES

Here are some words in Tagalog that may be used to talk about school. Note that some of these words are hardly used in everyday speech. Words marked with asterisks (\*) are rarely used in everyday speech; the English word will be used instead.

klase	<i>class</i>
libro	<i>book</i>
mahirap	<i>hard</i>
madali	<i>easy</i>
paaralan*	<i>school</i>
eskuwela	<i>school</i>
mababang paaralan*	<i>elementary school</i>
mataas na paaralan*	<i>high school</i>
pamantasan*	<i>university</i>
agham*	<i>sciences</i>
sining*	<i>arts</i>
aklatan*	<i>library</i>
kolehiyo*	<i>college</i>
araling panlipunan*	<i>social studies</i>
kasaysayan	<i>history</i>
matematika*	<i>mathematics</i>
tanong/magtanong	<i>question/to question</i>
sagot/sumagot	<i>answer/to answer</i>
turo/magturo	<i>teaching/to teach</i>
pag-aaral/mag-aryl	<i>studies/to study</i>
pagbasa/magbasa	<i>reading/to read</i>
pagsulat/magsulat	<i>writing/to write</i>

## 6E. CULTURE NOTE 1

Speaking in “Taglish” (a mixture of Tagalog and English in speech) has not only become common in everyday oral expression but also has become the *lingua franca* in the world of commerce, the media, popular culture, and even academia. This is not a recent phenomenon. Filipinos have been code-switching from the time their languages came in contact with the languages of two world powers via colonization. Part of this is inevitable due to the fact that Tagalog does not always have equivalents for modern terms. But even where there are equivalents, Tagalog speakers, especially in urban areas, might still prefer the English terms. Few speakers of Tagalog would

ever say they will do research in the *aklutan* (library). *Magre-research ako sa library* is how the modern Tagalog speaker would put it.

## 6F. GRAMMAR

### **Ma- Verbs**

Another group of Tagalog verbs are those that use the *ma-* affix. Let's look at the verb roots of some of these verbs.

<b>kinig</b>	<i>listen</i>
<b>nood</b>	<i>watch</i>
<b>tapos</b>	<i>finish</i>

The following roots are not verbs but nouns. They only become verbs when a verbal affix is attached.

<b>pagod</b>	<i>tiredness</i>
<b>tulog</b>	<i>sleep</i>
<b>sira</b>	<i>break, defect</i>
<b>uhaw</b>	<i>thirst</i>
<b>gutom</b>	<i>hunger</i>

Let's first learn how to form the infinitives of some of these verbs. To do this, add the prefix *ma-* to the root.

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE	MEANING
<b>kinig</b>	<b>makinig</b>	<i>to listen</i>
<b>nood</b>	<b>manood</b>	<i>to watch</i>
<b>tulog</b>	<b>matulog</b>	<i>to sleep</i>

Now here are the forms of some *ma-* verbs in the three aspects. Take note of the use of the prefix *na-* in the completed and incomplete aspects:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>makinig</b>	<b>nakinig</b>	<b>makikinig</b>	<b>nakikinig</b>
<b>manood</b>	<b>nanood</b>	<b>manonood</b>	<b>nanonood</b>
<b>matulog</b>	<b>natulog</b>	<b>matutulog</b>	<b>natutulog</b>
<b>mapagod</b>	<b>napagod</b>	<b>mapapagod</b>	<b>napapagod</b>
<b>mauhaw</b>	<b>nauhaw</b>	<b>mauuhaw</b>	<b>nauuhaw</b>

**Manonood ako ng TV mamaya.**

*I'm going to watch TV later.*

**Napagod ang mga bata sa eskuwela.**

*The kids got tired in school.*

**Natutulog ka na?**

*Are you sleeping already?*

**Sino'ng nakikinig sa radyo?**

*Who's listening to the radio?*

### **Expressing “to Know”**

To express “to know” in Tagalog, *alam* is mostly used to express knowledge of a fact or information, while *marunong* is used to express knowledge of how to do something (to know a person is a different verb, one which we will learn later on in this course). Neither is a verb, so they are not conjugated according to aspects. *Marunong* uses the subject/ANG pronouns and *alam* uses the object/NG pronouns. Observe the following examples:

**Marunong ka ng Tagalog?**

*Do you know Tagalog?*

**Alam mo ang sagot?**

*Do you know the answer?*

To express knowing how to do something with *marunong*, the neutral or infinitive form of the verb is used. In addition, it is mostly *-um-* and *mag-* verbs that are used with *marunong*. The linker *-ng* is attached to the ANG pronoun.

**Marunong akong magsalitang ingles.**

*I know (how to speak) English.*

**Marunong siyang pumunta sa Intramuros.**

*He/She knows how to get to Intramuros. (lit., He/She knows how to go to Intramuros.)*

### **More on Expressing Sentences in the Negative**

In Lesson 1, you learned how to express the negative form of sentences with ANG pronouns. For all other sentences that do not contain ANG pronouns, the word order is different. For those sentences, the word *hindi* (no) is simply placed at the beginning of the sentence:

**Mahirap ang klase.**

*The class is hard.*

**Hindi mahirap ang klase.**

*The class is not hard.*

**Kumain si Ben.**

*Ben ate.*

**Hindi kumain si Ben.**

*Ben did not eat.*

## 6G. READING

Read the following excerpt from a report on the environment written by a student for his science class. Look for as many words as you can that look borrowed from either Spanish or English. Remember that the letters *f* and *v* do not exist in Tagalog and are replaced with the letters *p* and *b*, respectively.

**Pina-imbestigahan ng Presidente ang mga akusasyon laban sa ilang opisyal ng gobyerno na pinaghinalaan kasangkot sa illegal logging. Anya hindi titigil ang administrasyon niya sa paghanap ng isang radikal na solusyon sa nasabing problema na ayon din sa kanya ay isang trahedyang pam bansa. Nagpaplano ding makipagpulong ang Presidente sa isang grupo ng mga senador at ilang eksperto para pag-usapan ang ilang panukalang batas laban sa illegal logging at iba pang isyung pangkalikasan.**

*The President has ordered an investigation of charges against a government official suspected of involvement in illegal logging. She said that her administration is not going to stop until it finds a radical solution to the said problem which she also calls a national tragedy. She is also planning to meet with a group of senators and experts to discuss bills against illegal logging along with other environmental issues.*

## 6H. CULTURE NOTE 2

In the summer of 1901, early during the American colonization of the Philippines (the United States' only colony), a shipload of 500 American teachers arrived in Manila Bay. Deployed by Washington, their task was to teach English to Filipinos as part of the government's policy of Benevolent Assimilation. The teachers came to be known as the "Thomasites," after the name of the vessel they came in on. From the capital, they were sent to other islands to perform their duty in a country ravaged by war. They found a very literate multilingual population that still held a sort of linguistic allegiance to their old colonial masters, the Spaniards, who had just left in defeat after more than three hundred years. At first the people passively resisted yet another colonial imposition of a foreign tongue, this one even more challenging than the last one. Were the Thomasites successful? The Philippines is the third largest English-speaking country in the world, and its educational system remains American in style, with English as the main language of instruction.

To learn more about the history of education in the Philippines, you may visit [www.deped.gov.ph/about\\_deped/history.asp](http://www.deped.gov.ph/about_deped/history.asp).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose from the list of *ma-* verbs below to complete the following sentences. Fill in each blank with the completed (past) form of the verb root you choose by adding the prefix *na-*. You might not use all the words.

*tapos kinig tulog sira pagod nood gutom*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ kami ng TV kahapon.
2. Pagod ako dahil hindi ako \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Hindi niya \_\_\_\_\_ ang test sa math.
4. Bakit \_\_\_\_\_ ang computer mo?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ang mga bata kaya kumain sila dito.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ kami ng radyo habang nag-aaral si Kuya.

B. Fill in each blank with either *alam* or *marunong*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ si Kathy ng Tagalog.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ mo ang pangalan ko?
3. Saan pupunta ang Tatay mo?—Hindi ko \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4–5. \_\_\_\_\_ mo ba na si James ay \_\_\_\_\_ ng karate?
6. Ano'ng oras na?—Hindi namin \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ ang mga kapatid mong magsalita ng Espanyol?

C. Choose a word from the list below to complete the following dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*para kahapon libro mahirap tanong sagot*

- A: May test ka ba sa English \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_?
- B: Oo, \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ang mga \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_!
- A: Talaga?
- B: Oo, tapos ang mga \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ wala sa \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: Hindi ka siguro nag-aryl!

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. a) *nakikinig ng radyo* 2. b) *nagbabasa* 3. b) *madali* 4. *Tanong* means “question.” 5. *Ano’ng ginagawa mo?* means “What are you doing?”

### Exercises

- A. 1. nanood 2. natulog 3. natapos 4. nasira 5. nagutom 6. nakinig
- B. 1. marunong 2. alam 3. alam 4. alam 5. marunong 6. alam  
7. marunong
- C. 1. kahapon 2. mahirap 3. tanong 4. sagot 5. libro

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

Using *marunong* and *alam*, write a list of things that you know how to do and facts that you know. Look up words in a Tagalog dictionary if you need to and make a note of them in your journal as part of your growing vocabulary list. You can use English words, both verbs and nouns, and inflect them as *mag-* verbs. For example, “*Marunong akong mag-type.*” Filipinos really do talk like this, and doing this will be helpful as you learn modern Tagalog. You can also practice asking questions with these words by interviewing a Filipino speaker.

**Marunong ako . . .**

**Alam ko . . .**

# LESSON

# 7

## *Puwedeng magtanong?*

### Can I ask a question?

In this lesson, you will learn how to ask for and give directions, express “to be able to,” and form questions using *ba*. You will also become familiar with an important concept in the Tagalog language: verbal focus. Let’s start with a vocabulary warm-up.

#### 7A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Puwedeng magtanong?	<i>Can (I) ask a question?</i>
malapit	<i>near</i>
malayo	<i>far</i>
hinahanap	<i>looking for</i>
Gaano kalayo?	<i>How far?</i>
kailangan	<i>need</i>
sabihin	<i>tell, say (command)</i>
Walang anuman.	<i>It's nothing. You're welcome.</i>

#### 7B. DIALOGUE

Jay is a *balikbayan* (see Culture Note 2) who is back in the Philippines for vacation. He is staying in Manila for a couple of days before going south to visit his relatives in Cebu. Today he finds himself a bit lost, trying to make his way around the large metropolis.

**Jay:** Magandang hapon po. Puwedeng magtanong?

**Rosa:** Ano po ‘yun?

**Jay:** Mayroon bang malapit na bangko dito?

Rosa: Ah, oo mayroon. Diyan lang. Deretso, sa kaliwa. Pangalawang kalye. Nasa tabi ng tindahan, tapat ng simbahan.

Jay: Salamat. Hinahanap ko rin po 'yung National Museum. Hindi ba malapit lang dito?

Rosa: Medyo malayo. Kailangan ninyong mag-jeep o mag-taksi.

Jay: Hindi ba puwedeng lumakad lang?

Rosa: Hindi, eh.

Jay: Gaano kalayo?

Rosa: Mga isang oras siguro kung lalakarin mo.

Jay: Malayo nga. Saan ako puwedeng pumara ng jeep o taksi?

Rosa: Diyan sa tapat ng gasolinahan. Tumawid ka sa kabilang. Maraming taksi doon. Sabihin mo lang "Agrifina Circle."

Jay: Sige, salamat po.

Rosa: Walang anuman!

*Jay: Good afternoon. Can I ask a question?*

*Rosa: Yes, what is it?*

*Jay: Is there a bank near here?*

*Rosa: Oh, yes, there is. Just around here. Straight ahead, to your left, on the second street. It's next to a store, across from a church.*

*Jay: Thanks. I'm also looking for the National Museum. Isn't it near here?*

*Rosa: It's a bit far. You need to take the jeep or a taxi.*

*Jay: Can't I walk there?*

*Rosa: Not really.*

*Jay: How far is it?*

*Rosa: Maybe around an hour if you're going to walk it.*

*Jay: It is far! Where can I hail a jeep or taxi?*

*Rosa: There, across from the gasoline station. Cross to the other side. There are a lot of taxis there. Just say, "Agrifina Circle."*

*Jay: Okay, thanks!*

*Rosa: You're welcome.*

### **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. Jay approaches Rosa, and the first thing he asks her is  
a) *Puwedeng magtanong?*      b) *Saan ang bangko?*      c) *Gaano kalayo?*
2. The bank Rosa is referring to is  
a) *tapat ng National Museum*      b) *tapat ng simbahan*      c) *tapat ng gasolinahan*
3. Walking to the museum, according to Rosa, will take Jay  
a) *sampung minuto*      b) *isang oras*      c) *kalahating oras*
4. *Malapit* means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Walang anuman* means \_\_\_\_\_.

### **7C. VOCABULARY**

deretso	<i>straight</i>
dito	<i>here</i>
diyan	<i>there</i>
doon	<i>over there</i>
gasolinahan	<i>gasoline station</i>
hinahanap ( <i>root hanap</i> )	<i>looking for, finding</i>
kaliwa	<i>left</i>
kalye	<i>street</i>
kanan	<i>right</i>
lumakad ( <i>root lakad</i> )	<i>to walk</i>
magtanong ( <i>root tanong</i> )	<i>to ask a question</i>
malapit	<i>near</i>
malayo	<i>far</i>
pumara ( <i>root para</i> )	<i>to stop, to hail</i>

sa tabi	<i>next to</i>
sa tapat	<i>in front of, across from</i>
sabihin ( <i>root</i> sabi)	<i>to say, to tell</i>
taksi	<i>taxi</i>
tumawid ( <i>root</i> tawid)	<i>to cross</i>
tindahan	<i>store</i>

## 7D. KEY PHRASES

The following words and phrases are typically used to ask and give directions:

Puwedeng magtanong?	<i>Can (I) ask a question?</i>
Ano (po) 'yun?	<i>What is it?</i>
Alam mo/ninyo kung . . . ?	<i>Do you know where . . . ?</i>
Nasaan ang . . . ?	<i>Where is . . . ?</i>
Gaano kalayo/kalapit ang . . . ?	<i>How far/near is . . . ?</i>
Malapit lang.	<i>It's near.</i>
Malayo.	<i>It's far.</i>
Saan ako puwedeng sumakay ng bus/taksi?	<i>Where can I take a bus/taxi?</i>
Sumakay ka/kayo ng . . .	<i>Take a . . .</i>
Lumiko ka/kayo . . .	<i>Turn . . .</i>
Sa kaliwa/sa kanan	<i>To the left/to the right</i>
Nasa kanto ng . . .	<i>It's on the corner of . . .</i>
Hinahanap ko ang . . .	<i>I'm looking for . . .</i>
Nawawala ako.	<i>I'm lost.</i>

## 7E. CULTURE NOTE 1

*Maynila* is the Tagalog word for Manila, after its original name of *May-Nilad*, which was the name of a Muslim settlement at the mouth of the Pasig River, where white water lilies called *nilad* grew in abundance. Today, Manila is one of the 17 cities and municipalities that comprise the Metropolitan Manila area. Home to nearly 10 million people, it is the seventh largest city in Asia and the 16th worldwide. Manila traffic is legendary—

during rush hour its streets are congested with cars and buses, and the uniquely Filipino *jeepneys*. These public utility vehicles originated from American G.I. jeeps and were adopted as a popular means of mass transport. They are not only a colorful fixture of the Manila urban landscape but also an enduring symbol of Filipino ingenuity.

## 7F. GRAMMAR

### Verbal Focus

Verbal focus is very important in the Tagalog language. It indicates the thematic role of the subject of the sentence (subject = the *ang*-marked noun phrase or ANG pronoun in the sentence). As with aspect, focus is expressed through different affixes.

For now, let's study two focuses: actor and theme. If the subject functions as the actor in a sentence, the verb is in **actor focus**. If the subject functions as the theme, the verb is in **theme focus**. This is roughly equivalent to active and passive voices in English grammar, but only up to a certain extent as there are other focuses in the Tagalog language.

So far, the verbs that you have encountered in the course are mostly actor-focused verbs. Consider these examples:

**Kumain ako ng hapunan.**

*I ate dinner.*

**Nagbasa ako ng libro.**

*I read (past) a book.*

**Pumara ako ng taksi.**

*I stopped a taxi.*

Notice that in these sentences, the subject is *ako* (I) and it performs the role of actor, and the nouns, "dinner," "book," and "taxi" are the themes (hence marked with the marker *ng* instead of *ang*).

Now observe the same sentences when the focus in each of them is shifted to the theme:

**Kinain ko ang hapunan.**

*I ate (the) dinner.*

**Binasa ko ang libro.**

*I read the book.*

**Pinara ko ang taksi.**

*I stopped the taxi.*

Note the following:

1. *Ang* has replaced *ng* as a marker before "dinner," "book," and "taxi," indicating that the noun that follows it is now in focus.

2. The ANG pronoun *ako* has changed to the NG pronoun *ko*, indicating that it is no longer in focus.

You may also have observed from the examples above that shifting the focus on the verb may mean a slight but important difference in the meaning of the sentence. For example, if a Tagalog speaker wants to say “I read (past) a book,” he or she will inflect the root word *basa* “read” with the actor focus affix *mag-*, thus forming *magbasa* “to read,” which is an actor-focused verb:

**Nagbasa ako ng libro.**

*I read a book.*

However, if the Tagalog speaker wants to say “I read **the** book,” he or she will inflect *basa* with the theme focus affix *-in*, thus forming *binasa* “read,” which is a theme-focused verb:

**Binasa ko ang libro.**

*I read the book.*

This is something to keep in mind about focus in Tagalog: whenever we want to express the idea of a definite theme (for example, “I read **the** book” as opposed to “I read a book”), we are obligated to use a theme-focused verb. This restriction applies to themes only. Actors can be definite even though the verb in the sentence is not in actor focus. For example, we can have *Binasa ng bata ang libro* “The child read the book”—in this sentence, the verb is in theme focus. Nevertheless, the actor noun phrase *ng bata* (NG + child) can be interpreted as definite (“the child”).

The above sentence is an example where the choice of a Tagalog speaker to use one focus over the other has a grammatical basis. In other cases, where there is flexibility, the choice is guided by what the speaker wants to focus on, or emphasize, in a sentence.

Not all verb roots are as “versatile” as the verbs used in the sentences above, which are able to take on different affixations according to the focus. So it is important for the Tagalog learner to learn both the flexibility and limitations of each verb root.

Let’s now look at the affixes for theme-focused verbs, starting with the affix *-in*, by using some verb roots that you are already familiar with. (Again, note that not all verb roots we have seen so far can be changed using this affix, meaning that they cannot be expressed with the theme as the focus.)

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>kain</b>	<b>kainin</b>	<b>kinain</b>	<b>kakainin</b>	<b>kinakain</b>
<b>hanap</b>	<b>hanapin</b>	<b>hinanap</b>	<b>hahanapin</b>	<b>hinahanap</b>
<b>sabi</b>	<b>sabihin</b>	<b>sinabi</b>	<b>sasabihin</b>	<b>sinasabi</b>
<b>para</b>	<b>parahin</b>	<b>pinara</b>	<b>paparahin</b>	<b>pinapara</b>

To form the infinitive form of theme-focused verbs, *-in* is added to the end of the verb root. If it ends in a vowel, *-hin* is added. To form the completed aspect, *-in* is inserted before the first vowel of the root. To form the contemplated aspect, the first syllable of the infinitive form is repeated. The incomplete aspect is formed by repeating the first syllable of the root and inserting *-in* before the first vowel.

**Sasabihin niya ang sekreto.**

*He/She will tell the secret.*

**Hahanapin namin ang simbahan.**

*We will look for the church.*

**Pinara ko ang taksi.**

*I stopped the taxi.*

Some other verbs that can take the *-in* affix: *basa, dalaw, gamit, alis, gising*.

The other affixes used for theme-focused verbs are *-an* and *i*. We will look at these in a later lesson.

### **Expressing “to Be Able To”**

In Tagalog, a distinction is made between ability (being able to do something) and skill (knowing how to do something). To express knowing how to perform a skill, *marunong* is used.

**Marunong ako ng Tagalog.**

*I know Tagalog.*

The words *puwede* and *maari* are used to express being able to do something. *Puwede* is derived from the Spanish verb “*poder*” (which means “to be able to”) and used more in everyday speech, while the Tagalog *maari* is used in formal spoken language and written texts. As with other modal verbs, they are used with the infinitive or neutral aspect of any given verb according to any focus.

**Puwede akong mag-taksi.**

*I can take a taxi.*

**Hindi siya puwedeng pumunta dito.**

*He can't come here.*

**Puwede silang matulog ngayon.**

*They can sleep now.*

**Maari kayong sumulat.**

*You (pl.) may write.*

### **Formulating Questions with “Ba”**

*Ba* is a Tagalog word used for yes-no questions. It functions in the same way a question mark functions in orthography. It is usually placed after the

first word of a sentence. The exception is the pronoun *ka* and other monosyllabic pronouns or words like *na* (already) and *pa* (still, yet), which will precede *ba* in the sentence. Take a look at the following examples:

**Amerikano ba siya?**  
*Is he/she American?*

**Mayroon ba ditong bangko?**  
*Is there a bank here?*

**Kakain ka ba?**  
*Will you eat?*

**Dumalaw na ba sila?**  
*Did they already visit?*

To form a negative question, *ba* is generally placed after *hindi*. Whenever the pronoun *ka* is used, *ba* is placed after it.

**Hindi ba siya taga-Maynila?**  
*Isn't he/she from Manila?*

**Hindi ba tayo aalis?**  
*Aren't we leaving?*

**Hindi ka ba aalis?**  
*Aren't you leaving?*

## 7G. READING

Katrina is writing an e-mail to her friend Josie, who is about to come to Manila for a visit. Read through her e-mail and see how much you understand. Underline all the theme-focus verbs that use the *-in* affix. While you're at it, also observe the actor-focus verbs with the *-um-* and *mag-* affixes and compare them with the theme-focus verbs. Look up the meanings of verbs you are not familiar with to increase your vocabulary.

Dear Josie,

Sa wakas, magbabalikbayan ka na! Oras na nga at ilan taon ka ding hindi umuwi dito. Sasabihin ko sa lahat ng kaibigan natin na darating ka. Matutuwa silang lahat. Dalawin natin sila pagdating mo dito. Alam ko pupunta ka rin sa Baguio. Kung gusto mo sasama ako sa iyo. Gamin natin 'yun van namin para maginhawa ang biyahe. Planuhin mong mabuti ang bakasyon mo dahil tatlong linggo ka lang dito at maraming kang bibisitahin. Dito pa lang sa Maynila, kulang na ang panahon. Sabi-hin mo lang sa akin kung may gusto ka pang gawin dito para maplano natin agad, okay? Sige. Magkita na lang tayo sa isang buwan.

Katrina

Dear Josie,

You're coming home at last! It's about time, as you haven't come home in a few years. I will tell all our friends that you're coming. They will all be glad. Let's visit them when you get here. I know you're going to Baguio. If you want, I'll go with you. Let's use our van so the trip will be comfortable. Plan your trip well because you'll only be here for three weeks and you have a lot of people to visit. Just here in Manila, you won't have the time. Just tell me if there's something else you want to do so we can plan it right away, okay? Bye for now. We'll see each other in a month.

Katrina

## 7H. CULTURE NOTE 2

The compound word *balikbayan* (*balik* "return" + *bayan* "country") is the special name given to a Filipino residing abroad who has returned to the country for a visit. This often sentimental journey back to the native land speaks of the Filipino's strong homing instinct and is always the cure, albeit short-lived, for nostalgia-ridden expatriates. They come back in droves, many with their foreign-born offspring, to reconnect their children to their roots. Their homecoming is cause for celebration, and the welcome is always effusive. Many wish to come back for good and spend their retirement years in a place they have never stopped calling home.

In 2003 the Philippine Congress recognized what is behind this phenomenon and gave *balikbayans* what many of them longed for. It passed a law allowing former Filipinos and their minor dependents who have become naturalized citizens of other countries to regain their Philippine citizenship.

The following website lists some links that are helpful to *balikbayans* and may interest any student of Filipino culture: [balik-bayan.com/index.shtml](http://balik-bayan.com/index.shtml).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue.

*anuman gasolinahan diyan kalye kaliwa malapit tabi*

A. Mayroon bang \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_ na \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ dito?

B. Oo, \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ lang sa susunod na \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Kanan o \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_?

B. Deretso lang po, nasa kanto, sa \_\_\_\_\_ (6) \_\_\_\_\_ ng banko.

A. Okey, salamat po.

B. Walang \_\_\_\_\_ (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

B. Complete the following verb chart using the *-in* affix:

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<i>gamit</i> (use)				
<i>sabi</i> (say, tell)				
<i>hanap</i> (look for)				
<i>dala</i> (bring)				
<i>puri</i> (praise)				

C. Translate the following sentences using the verbs from the chart in the previous activity:

1. I will bring the book.

---

2. She praised the child.

---

3. Did you (plural) say (it) in Tagalog?

---

4. I am looking for the street.

---

5. She is using the bathroom.

---

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. a) *Puwedeng magtanong?*    2. b) *tapat ng simbahan*    3. b) *isang oras*
4. *Malapit* means “near.”    5. *Walang anuman* means “You’re welcome.”

### Exercises

- A. 1. malapit    2. gasolinahan    3. diyan    4. kalye    5. kaliwa    6. tabi  
7. anuman

B.

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<i>gamit</i> (use)	<i>gamitin</i>	<i>ginamit</i>	<i>gagamitin</i>	<i>ginagamit</i>
<i>sabi</i> (say, tell)	<i>sabihin</i>	<i>sinabi</i>	<i>sasabihin</i>	<i>sinasabi</i>
<i>hanap</i> (look for)	<i>hanapin</i>	<i>hinanap</i>	<i>hahanapin</i>	<i>hinahanap</i>
<i>dala</i> (bring)	<i>dalahin</i>	<i>dinala</i>	<i>dadalahin</i>	<i>dinadala</i>
			<i>(dadalahin)</i>	
<i>puri</i> (praise)	<i>purihin</i>	<i>pinuri</i>	<i>pupurihin</i>	<i>pinupuri</i>

C. 1. Dadalhin ko ang libro. 2. Pinuri niya ang bata. 3. Sinabi ba ninyo (iyon) sa Tagalog? 4. Hinahanap ko ang kalye. 5. Ginagamit niya ang banyo.

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

Imagine that you are having people over to your place. Write out the directions in as many Tagalog words as you can, taking particular care of your verb forms. You may use *-um-* verbs, such as *liko*, *sakay*, *para*, *punta*, etc., in the infinitive form to express commands, or the verb *puwede* in your directions. Make use of words and expressions from this lesson that are related to giving directions. Write the directions in your journal and try to use them in real life if you have the opportunity. Have fun!

*Nandiyan ba si Mister  
Panganiban?*

## Is Mr. Panganiban there?

This lesson focuses on basic telephone language and how to make requests. You will also learn how to express need and ability as well as how to use conjunctions to link phrases in Tagalog. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up!

**8A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP**

nandiyan	<i>is there, are there</i>
darating (root dating)	<i>will come, will arrive</i>
makausap (root usap)	<i>to be able to speak to, to be able to talk to</i>
pakisabi (root sabi)	<i>please tell</i>
pakitanong (root tanong)	<i>please ask</i>

**8B. DIALOGUE**

Jennifer works for a small marketing company in Makati City, where she is in charge of procuring equipment. She calls a computer supplier to inquire about an order she placed last week.

Jennifer: Hello? Nandiyan na ba si Mister Panganiban?

Secretary: Wala pa po siya.

Jennifer: Ah, ganoon? Ano'ng oras siya darating?

Secretary: Mga alas-nuwebe. Ano po ang kailangan nila?

Jennifer: Kasi importante na makausap ko siya tungkol sa order namin noong isang linggo.

Secretary: Gusto ninyong mag-iwan ng message?

Jennifer: Oo, sige. Pakisabi sa kaniya na tumawag ang Philcorp. Pakitanong kung kailan darating 'yung order namin. Kung puwede tumawag siya dito agad.

Secretary: Sige po. Ano po ang pangalan at numero nila?

Jennifer: Jennifer Rivera na taga-Philcorp sa Makati. Alam na niya ang numero dito. Tumawag din ako kahapon pero hindi ko rin siya nakausap. Okay, sige. Salamat, ha?

Secretary: Walang anuman. Sige po.

*Jennifer: Hello? Is Mister Panganiban there?*

*Secretary: He is not here yet.*

*Jennifer: Is that so? When (what time) will he be coming in?*

*Secretary: Around 9 o'clock. Do you need anything?*

*Jennifer: It's important that I talk to him about an order we placed last week.*

*Secretary: Would you like to leave a message?*

*Jennifer: Yes, sure. Please tell him that Philcorp called. Please ask him when our order will get to our Makati branch. If possible, ask him to call me right away.*

*Secretary: Sure. What's your name and number?*

*Jennifer: Jennifer Rivera from Philcorp in Makati. He already knows the number here. I called yesterday, too, but I wasn't able to talk to him then, either. Okay, goodbye. Thanks.*

*Secretary: You're welcome. Bye.*

## **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. When Jennifer calls the office, the first thing she asks is  
a) *Kailan siya darating?* b) *Nasaan si* c) *Nandiyán ba si Mr. Mr. Panganiban?* *Panganiban?*
2. According to the secretary, Mr. Panganiban is coming in at around  
a) *alas-nuwebe* b) *alas-otso* c) *alas-diyes*

3. Jennifer wants to know about  
a) an appointment      b) an order      c) a meeting
4. *Kailangan* expresses \_\_\_\_\_.  
5. The prefix *paki-* is equivalent to \_\_\_\_\_ in English.

## 8C. VOCABULARY

agad	<i>right away</i>
darating ( <i>root dating</i> )	<i>will come, will arrive</i>
importante	<i>important</i>
kasi	<i>because</i>
kung puwede	<i>if it can be, if possible</i>
mag-iwan ( <i>root iwan</i> )	<i>to leave (something or someone)</i>
nakausap	<i>was able to speak with</i>
noong isang buwan	<i>last month</i>
noong isang linggo	<i>last week</i>
noong isang taon	<i>last year</i>
tumawag ( <i>root tawag</i> )	<i>called</i>
tungkol	<i>about</i>

## 8D. KEY PHRASES

Tagalog speakers use the following phrases when talking on the phone:

Hello!	<i>Hello!</i>
Nandiyan ba si...?	<i>Is...there?</i>
Puwedeng makausap si...?	<i>Can I talk to...?</i>
Wala pa siya.	<i>He/She is not here yet.</i>
Darating siya alas... .	<i>He/She will be coming/arriving at...</i>
Puwedeng mag-iwan ng message?	<i>Can I leave a message?</i>
Pwedeng magbilin?	<i>Can I leave a message?</i>
Pakisabi mo sa kaniya na... .	<i>Please tell him/her that...</i>

... tawagan ako	<i>... to call me</i>
... kailangan ko ...	<i>... I need ...</i>
... tatawag ulit ako.	<i>... I'll call again.</i>
Pakitanong kung ...	<i>Please ask if ...</i>
Pakitanong kung kailan ...	<i>Please ask when ...</i>
Pakitanong kung saan ...	<i>Please ask where ...</i>
Pakitanong kung ano ...	<i>Please ask what ...</i>
Pakitanong kung alin ...	<i>Please ask which ...</i>
Kung puwede ...	<i>If he/she can ...</i>
Ano'ng numero ninyo/nila?	<i>What's your (polite form) number?</i>

## 8E. CULTURE NOTE 1

Makati City is the business and financial center of the Philippines, nicknamed the “Wall Street of the Philippines” and home to the country’s most powerful and affluent. Makati City is one of the 17 cities and municipalities comprising the Metro Manila area and easily the most cosmopolitan of them all, with its towering skyscrapers, five-star hotels, upscale shops, and posh residences. Major banks, multinational corporations, embassies, and the Makati Stock Exchange have also made their home in this city. Deemed a useless wasteland dotted with swamps and cogon grass in the Spanish era, it is now considered the country’s premier city and a model of modern urban planning.

## 8F. GRAMMAR

### More on Expressing Ability: *Maka-* Affixation

We have seen that in Tagalog, the word *puwede* is used to express ability. However, we have mainly seen it used in its infinitive form:

**Puwede kang pumunta dito?**  
*Can you come here?*

In Tagalog, ability can also be marked in verbs using affixation. The *maka-* affixation, used for actor-focused sentences, marks both the ability and the opportunity to carry out the action specified by the verb root. It can also be used to express accidental or involuntary actions over which the actor perceives he or she has no control.

Taking the root *usap* (to speak, to talk), we have the following forms according to the *maka-* affixation:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>makausap</b>	<b>nakausap</b>	<b>makakausap</b>	<b>nakakausap</b>
<i>to be able to speak</i>	<i>was able to speak</i>	<i>will be able to speak</i>	<i>is able to speak</i>

The infinitive form cannot stand by itself and must be used with a modal verb, such as *puwede* (can), *gusto* (like, want), *kailangan* (need), etc., or in a negative sentence.

**Puwede kong makausap si Mr. Henares?**

*Can I speak with Mr. Henares?*

**Gusto kong makausap ang tatay mo.**

*I want to (be able to) speak with your father.*

**Hindi niya makausap si Christy.**

*He/She is not able to speak with Christy.*

When the *maka-* affix is used with other aspects, the verbs can stand by themselves. Observe this affixation used in actor-focused sentences with verb roots that you are now familiar with:

**Nakapunta ka ba sa Manila kahapon?**

*Were you able to go to Manila yesterday?*

**Makakakain ka ba sa bahay?**

*Will you be able to eat at home?*

**Nakakagising ka ba ng maaga?**

*Are you able to wake up early?*

To express ability in actor-focused verbs, the *ma-* affixation is used. Let's take the verb root *sabi* (say, tell) affixed according to *ma-*:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>masabi</b>	<b>nasabi</b>	<b>masasabi</b>	<b>nasasabi</b>
<i>to be able to say/tell</i>	<i>was able to say/tell</i>	<i>will be able to say/tell</i>	<i>is able to say/tell</i>

**Nasabi mo ba sa kaniya?**

*Were you able to tell him?*

**Ano na ang nasasabi mo sa Tagalog?**

*What are you able to say in Tagalog?*

**Masasabi mo ba ang gusto mo?**

*Will you be able to say what you want?*

The infinitive form, as with the *maka-* set, cannot stand by itself and is only used in the negative or with modal verbs:

**Hindi ko masabi ang pangalan niya.**  
*I can't say his/her name.*

**Dapat masabi mo ang totoo.**  
*You must be able to say what's true.*

## Expressing Need

Need is expressed in Tagalog with the word *kailangan*, and it is not inflected for aspect. It behaves like *gusto*, which means that the pronoun representing the subject doing the needing is in object/NG form.

<b>Kailangan ko</b>	<i>I need</i>
<b>Kailangan mo</b>	<i>You need (sing.)</i>
<b>Kailangan niya</b>	<i>He/she needs</i>
<b>Kailangan natin</b>	<i>We need (inclusive)</i>
<b>Kailangan namin</b>	<i>We need (exclusive)</i>
<b>Kailangan ninyo</b>	<i>You need (pl./sing. formal)</i>
<b>Kailangan nila</b>	<i>They need</i>

**Kailangan ko ng teleono.**

*I need a phone. (lit., A phone is necessary to me.)*

**Kailangan natin ang teleono.**

*We need the telephone.*

Notice the item that is required is in subject form. Similarly, if it is the presence of the speaker that is required, then the pronoun will appear in subject or ANG form:

**Kailangan ako sa bahay.**

*I am needed at home.*

**Kailangan tayo sa opisina.**

*We are needed at the office.*

Watch how the pronouns behave in the following examples:

**Kailangan natin siya.**

*We need him.*

**Kailangan niya tayo.**

*He needs us.*

As a modal verb, it is used with the infinitive form of verbs:

Kailangan kong mag-alar.

*I need to study.*

**Kailangan mong magtrabaho.**

*You need to work.*

Note here that the linker *-ng* is used to link a NG pronoun to the verb. This is another way that linkers can be used in Tagalog.

## **Command Form with *Paki-***

The prefix *paki-* is used to turn a verb root into a request and is limited to the NG pronouns *mo* (you) and *ninyo* (you, pl.). This is roughly equivalent to adding the word “please” to command forms in English to form a request.

Pakigawa mo 'yung report.

*Please do the report.*

Pakisabi ninyo sa kaniya na bukas ang meeting.

*Please tell him that the meeting is tomorrow.*

## Linking Phrases with Conjunctions

Let's look at two ways of linking phrases together in Tagalog. Take the following two sentences together:

**Pakisabi sa kaniya.**

*Please tell him.*

**Kailangan ko siyang makausap.**

*I need to speak with him.*

To join them together, the linker *na* is used, equivalent to the English conjunction “that.”

**Pakisabi sa kaniya na kailangan ko siyang makausap.**

***Please tell him that I need to speak to him.***

A different conjunction, *kung*, is needed before question words:

Hindi ko alam.

*I don't know.*

**Kailan ka darating.**

*When you will come.*

**Hindi ko alam kung kailan ka darating.**

**I don't know when you will come.**

*Kung* as a conjunction is likewise used with other question words such as *ano*, *sino*, *alin*, *saan*, *gaano*, etc. When it is not used to complement a sentence, *kung* has the meaning of “if.”

**Kung darating ka bukas, magluluto ako.**

*If you're arriving tomorrow, I'll cook.*

## **8G. READING**

Read the following e-mail message written by Delia Malabanan to her coworker Ernie. As you read, make note of the use of *kailangan* and the affixes and linkers that you have learned from this lesson:

*Ernie,*

Nakuha ko 'yung proposal mo kahapon, salamat. Sa palagay ko kailangan nating baguhin 'yung venue ng meeting. Hindi makakapunta sa Laguna si Mr. Johnson dahil masyadong malayo at magagahol na siya sa panahon. Alas-tres ng hapon ang lipad niya papunta sa Davao. Siguro mas madali kung sa Makati na lang ang meeting. Ano sa palagay mo? Isang tanong pa: makakahanan ka ba ng puwedeng sumalubong sa kaniya sa airport? Kailangan kong malaman agad kung walang puweude para masabi ko sa staff dito. Pakitanong naman diyan. Sige. Salamat ulit sa tulong mo.

**P.S. Kung makakagawa ka ng itinerary para sa trip ni Mr. Johnson sa Davao, pakidala mo sa meeting natin bukas. Salamat.**

*Delia*

*Ernie,*

*I got your proposal yesterday, thanks. I think we need to change the meeting's venue. Mr. Johnson won't be able to go all the way to Laguna because he won't have enough time. His flight to Davao is at 4 p.m. Maybe it's better to hold the meeting in Makati. What do you think? One more question: Can you find someone who can pick him up at the airport? I need to know soon if no one can do it so I can tell the staff here. Please ask around. Bye. Thanks again for your help.*

***P.S. If you can make up an itinerary for Mr. Johnson's trip to Davao, please bring it to our meeting tomorrow. Thanks.***

*Delia*

## **8H. CULTURE NOTE 2**

Question: What's in a Filipino name? Answer: Layers of cultural diversity. Understandably, Spanish surnames abound as many Filipinos are descendants of Spaniards, and, as in any Latin American country, Castilian and

even Catalan or Basque last names are not uncommon. Late in the Spanish era, Filipinos were also alphabetically assigned Spanish surnames according to the towns they lived in to facilitate the collection of taxes. The moniker for the Filipino everyman is “Juan De la Cruz,” and the country’s name itself is after Philip II, who was heir to the Spanish throne when Spanish colonization began. A significant number of last names are of Chinese origin, orthographically romanized during the colonial period (*Tiangco, Cojuangco, Uytengs*). So are there indigenous Filipino names? Yes, thankfully: *Acop, Balatbat, Macaraeg, Panganiban, Silayan*, to name a few. These names are derived not only from Tagalog but also from other indigenous languages such as Ilocano and Cebuano.

Given names are another story. At one time the Catholic calendar was the main source for names, and then, later, Hollywood came into the picture. Today, while there are still Marias and Pedros, Dicks and Janes, modern Filipino name choices are more global, although still drawing mostly from the West. A truly indigenous given name (*Lakandula, Diwata*) is more of a rarity. Indigenous given names, juxtaposed with multicultural surnames, make for many unique combinations. To find out more about Filipino names, including a catalog of indigenous names, go to [www.bibingka.com/names](http://www.bibingka.com/names).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word or prefix from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*na nandiyan sino kailangan kung paki-*

A: \_\_\_(1)\_\_\_ba si Mrs. Kalaw?

B: Wala po. Nasa probinsya po. \_\_\_(2)\_\_\_ po sila?

A: Kaibigan niya. Si Mrs. Hernandez. Alam mo ba \_\_\_(3)\_\_\_ kailan siya nasa bahay?

B: Bukas pa ho ng umaga.

A: Puwedeng mag-iwan ng message? \_\_\_(4)\_\_\_ tanong mo kung makakapunta siya sa parti ko bukas. \_\_\_(5)\_\_\_ ko kasi na malaman agad.

B: Sige po. Sasabihin ko sa kaniya \_\_\_(6)\_\_\_ tumawag kayo.

A: Salamat, ha?

B. Fill in each blank with either *na* or *kung*.

1. Alam mo ba \_\_\_ importante ito?

2. Sabihin mo sa akin \_\_\_ kailan ka babalik.

3. Gusto kong malaman \_\_\_ sino ang dumating kahapon.

4. Pakisabi sa kaniya \_\_\_\_\_ nandito na si Mr. Dizon.
5. Pakitanong mo sa mga bata \_\_\_\_\_ alin dito ang mga libro nila.
6. Hindi namin sinabi \_\_\_\_\_ may asawa ka na.

C. Fill in each blank with the right form of the verb root in parentheses by using the *maka-* affixation to express ability.

1. Hindi ko siya (usap) \_\_\_\_\_ kahapon.
2. Bukas (dalaw) \_\_\_\_\_ kami sa ospital.
3. Lagi akong (tawag) \_\_\_\_\_ sa kaniya.
4. Gusto kong (hanap) \_\_\_\_\_ ng mga bagong empleyado.
5. Noong isang linggo, (punta) \_\_\_\_\_ ako sa Laguna.
6. Kailangan tayong (balik) \_\_\_\_\_ ng alas-singko.

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) *Nandiyan ba si Mr. Panganiban?*
2. a) *alas-nuwebe*
3. b) an order
4. *Kailangan* expresses “need.”
5. The prefix *paki-* is equivalent to “please” in English.

- A. 1. nandiyan 2. sino 3. kung 4. paki 5. kailangan 6. na
- B. 1. na/kung 2. kung 3. kung 4. na 5. kung 6. na/kung
- C. 1. nakausap 2. makakadalaw 3. nakakatawag 4. makahanap  
5. nakapunta 6. makabalik

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

The Internet is a great resource for learning another language. For this challenge, use an Internet search engine and type in Tagalog verb roots that you know with the affixes that you've learned from this lesson, like *maka-* or *paki-*. Doing this should take you to many Internet sites with authentic Tagalog texts. Read the contexts in which your words appear and try to understand them. Copy whole sentences into your journal, especially the ones whose meanings you have been able to figure out. Look up words that you do not understand and don't forget to jot down new vocabulary in your journal. The possibilities for learning through the Internet are endless. Make good use of it and have fun learning more Tagalog via the Internet!

## LESSON

# 9

*Magkano ito?*

How much is this?

In this lesson, you will learn some vocabulary used in shopping, as well as how to make comparisons and suggestions. You will also become familiar with other theme-focused verbs, demonstrative pronouns, and adjectives. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up!

### 9A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

regalo, pasalubong	<i>gift</i>
bigyan ( <i>root</i> bigay)	<i>give</i>
pera	<i>money</i>
hawakan ( <i>root</i> hawak)	<i>hold</i>
Magkano?	<i>How much?</i>
mahal	<i>expensive</i>
sapatos	<i>shoes</i>

### 9B. DIALOGUE

Gigi and Rico, two siblings living in Australia, are about to visit their family in the Philippines. They are at the mall, shopping for *pasalubong* (gifts for people back home), looking around and talking about what to buy.

Gigi: Hahanap pa ako ng regalo para sa Nanay.  
Tulungan mo ako.

Rico: Bigyan mo na lang kaya siya ng pera?

Gigi: Oo pero gusto ko ibili rin siya ng pasalubong.

Rico: Iyang mga bag tingnan mo. Ang ganda nito,  
o. Hawakan mo.

- Gigi: Ay, oo nga. Ang lambot ng balat. Magkano ito?
- Rico: Isang daan. Hindi masyadong mahal. Ano sa palagay mo?
- Gigi: I-text ko kaya siya para itanong kung kailangan niya ng bag.
- Rico: Bilhin mo na.
- Gigi: Sige na nga. Ilagay mo diyan. Ah, sandali. Tingnan din natin itong mga sapatos. Maganda iyang brown pero mas maganda itong itim . . . pero ito ba ang size niya?
- Rico: Bakit hindi mo isukat? Hindi ba magkasinglaki ang mga paa ninyo?
- Gigi: Oo . . . Ah, okey 'to. Tama lang. Halika na. Bayaran na natin.
- Rico: Sandali! Bibilhan ko pa ng pasalubong ang Tatay! Siya ang pinakamahirap bilhan.

- Gigi: I still have to look for a gift for mother. Help me.*
- Rico: How about just giving her money?*
- Gigi: Yeah, but I also want to buy her a (souvenir) gift.*
- Rico: Look at those bags. This one is nice. Hold it.*
- Gigi: Oh, yeah. The leather is soft. How much is this?*
- Rico: One hundred. It's not too expensive. What do you think?*
- Gigi: I probably should send her a text message to ask if she needs a bag.*
- Rico: Just buy it.*
- Gigi: Oh, all right. Put it there. Oh, wait. Let's look at these shoes too. Those brown ones are nice but these black ones are nicer . . . but is this her size?*
- Rico: Why don't you try them on? Aren't your feet the same size?*
- Gigi: Yeah . . . Okay, they're good. Just right. Let's go and pay now.*

*Rico: Wait! I still have to buy father a gift. He's the hardest one to shop for.*

### **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. To ask for help in finding a gift for their mother, Gigi asks Rico  
a) *Tingnan mo.*      b) *Ano sa palagay mo?*      c) *Tulungan mo ako.*
2. The bag she and Rico are looking at costs  
a) *isang daan*      b) *setenta*      c) *dalawang daan*
3. Gigi also wants to look at  
a) *mga libro*      b) *mga sapatos*      c) *mga telepono*
4. *Magkano* means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Mahal* means \_\_\_\_\_.

### **9C. VOCABULARY**

<b>Ano sa palagay mo?</b>	<i>What is your opinion? What do you think?</i>
<b>balat</b>	<i>skin, leather</i>
<b>bayad (root)</b>	<i>to pay</i>
<b>bili (root)</b>	<i>to buy</i>
<b>hawak (root)</b>	<i>to hold, to touch</i>
<b>kaya</b>	<i>perhaps</i>
<b>lagay (root)</b>	<i>to put</i>
<b>lambot</b>	<i>soft</i>
<b>magkasing-</b>	<i>equally (prefix)</i>
<b>mas</b>	<i>more (used in comparisons)</i>
<b>masyado</b>	<i>too</i>
<b>pinaka-</b>	<i>most (prefix)</i>
<b>sara (root)</b>	<i>to shut, to close</i>
<b>sukat (root)</b>	<i>size (noun), to try on (verb)</i>
<b>tama lang</b>	<i>just right</i>
<b>tulong (root)</b>	<i>to help</i>

## 9D. KEY PHRASES

The following are phrases you will commonly hear while shopping in the Philippines:

Magkano ito?	<i>How much is this?</i>
Ano'ng presyo?	<i>What's the price?</i>
Ang mahal naman!	<i>How expensive!</i>
Ang mura!	<i>How cheap!</i>
Mayroon kayong . . . ?	<i>Do you have . . . ?</i>
Mayroong iba?	<i>Is there another one?</i>
Nasaan ang mga . . . ?	<i>Where are the . . . ?</i>
. . . laruán	<i>. . . toys</i>
. . . damít	<i>. . . clothes</i>
. . . na pangbabae	<i>. . . women's</i>
. . . na panglalaki	<i>. . . men's</i>
. . . bestida	<i>. . . dress</i>
. . . blusa	<i>. . . blouse</i>
. . . pang-itaas	<i>. . . tops</i>
. . . pang-ibaba	<i>. . . bottoms</i>
. . . palda	<i>. . . skirt</i>
. . . pantalon	<i>. . . pants</i>
. . . amerikana	<i>. . . suit</i>
. . . medyas	<i>. . . socks</i>
. . . korbata	<i>. . . tie</i>
. . . maleta	<i>. . . luggage</i>
. . . alahas	<i>. . . jewelry</i>
. . . relo	<i>. . . watch</i>
. . . kasangkapan sa bahay	<i>. . . housewares</i>
. . . kasangkapan sa kusina	<i>. . . kitchenware</i>
. . . pangdekorasyon	<i>. . . decorative</i>
Puwedeng gumamit ng credit card?	<i>Can I use a credit card?</i>
Puwedeng isukat?	<i>Can I try it on?</i>

Mas gusto ko ito.

*I like this one more/better.*

Hindi ko gusto 'yan.

*I don't like that.*

Puwedeng tumawad?

*Can I haggle/ask for a better price?*

## 9E. CULTURE NOTE 1

Soon after Filipinos discovered wireless technology, they became avid “texters,” making use of the text messaging feature of their cellular phones like no one else in the world. It is estimated that the 12 million cell phone users in the country send 150 million text messages daily, the most by any single nation. Aside from providing a cheap alternative to phone calls, this technology seems to have found favor in a culture where familial bonds and social ties are top priority. Text messaging has indeed become indispensable to the modern Filipino lifestyle, as any public scene would attest to. Its use even extends from the mundane to the highly political. On one occasion, masses of people were hastily mobilized through text messages to participate in demonstrations that ultimately removed a president from power.

## 9F. GRAMMAR

### Demonstrative Pronouns

The following are demonstrative pronouns used in Tagalog:

	SUBJECT/ANG PRONOUN	OBJECT/NG PRONOUN
<i>this</i>	ito	nito
<i>that</i>	iyan	niyan
<i>that (over there)</i>	iyon	niyon

To form the plural, *ang mga* is added before demonstrative subject pronouns. The *i* in demonstrative subject pronouns is often dropped in informal speech ('to, 'yon, 'yan).

Now observe their use in both subject-focused and object-focused sentences:

**Tingnan mo ito ('to).**

*Look at this.*

**Kumain ka nito.**

*Eat this.*

**Bilhin mo iyan ('yan).**

*Buy that.*

## Gumawa ka niyan.

*Make that.*

To use them as adjectives, the suffix *-ng* is added:

**Bilhin mo itong libro.**

*Buy this book.*

**Bumili ka nitong libro.**

*Buy this book.*

## Comparatives

To express equality in Tagalog, the prefix *magkasing-* or *kasing-* is added to the adjective root. Take a look at the following examples:

**Magkasingganda si Amy at si Rose.**

*Amy and Rose are equally beautiful.*

**Si Amy ay kasingganda ni Rose.**

*Amy is as beautiful as Rose.*

**Ang sapatos ay kasingmahal ng bag.**

*The shoes are as expensive as the bag.*

Notice that the two nouns compared in the last two sentences have different markers. When using the *kasing-* prefix to express equality, the subject is marked with *si* or *ang*, and what it is being compared with is marked with *ni* or *ng*. Remember, *si* and *ni* will be used when comparing people whose names are mentioned, while *ang* and *ng* will be used for all other nouns.

To express inequality, place the markers *kaysa kay* (for names of people) or *kaysa sa* (for all other nouns) between the nouns that are being compared. The adjective is marked with *mas* (from the Spanish “*más*”; the Tagalog is *higit na*, but this is rarely used in everyday speech).

**Mas matangkad si Joel kaysa kay Carlo.**

*Joel is taller than Carlo.*

**Mas malaki ang bahay mo kaysa sa bahay ko.**

*Your house is bigger than mine.*

**Ang semento ay higit na matibay kaysa sa kahoy.**

*Cement is more durable than wood.*

The superlative (the most) is expressed with the prefix *pinaka-* attached to the adjective.

**Pinakamagandang babae siya.**

*She's the most beautiful woman.*

**Math ang pinakamahirap na klase.**

*Math is the hardest subject.*

Ito ang pinakamahal na kotse.

*This is the most expensive car.*

## **Theme, Beneficiary, and Location-Focused Verbs**

In Lesson 7, you learned that the verbal affix *-in* is used in sentences where the focus is on the theme. Other verbal affixes that indicate theme focus are *i-* and *-an*.

**Isara mo ang pinto.**

*Close the door.*

**Tulungan mo si Marie.**

*Help Marie.*

Aside from a general focus on the theme (the receiver of the action), a Tagalog sentence can also focus on something more specific, such as the beneficiary of the action (for whom or what an action is performed), or the location or direction (where or toward whom or what an action is directed). Both the *i-* and *-an* affixes can be used to mark the beneficiary focus. Consider the following sentences where, in both cases, the focus is on the beneficiary of the action (*Anne*) of buying (*bili*).

**Ibili mo si Anne ng sapatos.**

*Buy Anne shoes.*

**Bilhan mo si Anne ng sapatos.**

*Buy Anne shoes.*

Note that not all verbs have the flexibility to be used with both affixes without a change in meaning. Take the verb root *sulat* (to write). Used with the *i-* affix, the focus is on the theme (“number”).

**Isulat mo ang numero.**

*Write the number.*

When the affix *-an* is used, the focus is shifted to the one written to (the beneficiary), not what is written.

**Sulatan mo si Carol.**

*Write to Carol.*

Now let's look at the different forms of verbs that use these affixes.

The infinitive form of *i-* affix verbs is formed by placing *i-* in front of the root.

**sulat**

**isulat**

The completed aspect is formed by inserting *-in* before the first vowel of the infinitive form appearing after the *i-* (if the verb root starts with a vowel or the consonants *h*, *y*, *n*, or *l*, the affix is changed to *ni-* and is placed before the first syllable of the root).

**sulat**

**isinulat**

The contemplated aspect is formed by repeating the first syllable of the infinitive form appearing after the *i*.

**sulat**

**isusulat**

The incomplete aspect is formed by inserting *-in* before the first vowel of the repeated syllable of the contemplated form (again for verb roots that start with a vowel or the consonants *h, y, n*, or *l*, *ni*- is placed before the first repeated syllable).

**sulat**

**isiniisulat**

Look at the chart below for more examples of this formation:

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
bili	ibili	ibinili	ibibili	ibinibili
sulat	isulat	isinulat	isusulat	isiniisulat
lagay	ilagay	inilagay	ilalagay	inilalagay
sara	isara	isinara	isasara	isinasara

Now let's look at the forms of verbs with the *-an* affix.

VERB ROOT	INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
hawak	hawakan	hinawakan	hahawakan	hinahawakan
dala*	dalhan	dinalhan	dadalhan	dinadalhan
tulong**	tulungan	tinulungan	tutulungan	tinutulungan
tingin**	tingnan	tiningnan	titingnan	titingnan
bayad**	bayaran	binayaran	babayaran	binabayaran

\*If the verb root ends in *a*, the *a* is dropped and an *h* is added to the affix (*han*).

\*\*These verbs undergo spelling changes when used with these affixes.

## Numbers above 20

Let's now learn the rest of the numbers in Tagalog.

	TAGALOG FORM	SPANISH FORM
20	dalawampu	beynte
21	dalawampu't isa	beyntiuno
22	dalawampu't dalawa	beyntidos
23	dalawampu't tatlo	beyntitres

30	tatlumpu	treynta
40	apatnapu	kuwarenta
50	limampu	singkuwenta
60	animnapu	sesenta
70	pitumpu	setenta
80	walumpu	otsenta
90	siyamnapu	nobenta
100	isang daan	siyento
101	isang daan at isa	siyento uno
102	isang daan at dalawa	siyento dos
103	isang daan at tatllo	siyento tres
125	isang daan at dalawampu't lima	siyento beyntisinko
400	apat na raan	kuwatro siyentos
600	anim na raan	sais siyentos
900	siyam na raan	nuwebe siyentos
1000	isang libo, isanlibo	mil
1001	isang libo't isa	mil uno
2010	dalawang libo't sampa	dos mil diyes
1,000,000	isang milyon	-

Notice the use of the linkers *-ng* and *na* before *daan/raan*, *libo*, and *milyon*.

## 9G. READING

The word *bilin* in Tagalog can mean a request for a favor, an errand, or even an item to buy. Read the following e-mail message written by Andy to his brother Dan, who lives abroad and is about to visit his family in the Philippines. Notice how he makes his requests using the affixations that you've learned from this lesson.

**Subject: Mga bilin**

Dan,

Ito na 'yung mga bilin ng mga tao dito. Ready? Mahaba itong listahan. ;-)

Dalhan mo daw si Nanay ng mga kubrekama. Walang bilin ang Taytay pero sa palagay ko, ibili mo na lang siya ng shirts na pamasok niya. Magkasinglaki yata kayo ng sukat. Kailangan niya 'yun. Sa akin naman, sapatos na lang ang ipasalubong mo at saka ibili mo din ako ng digital kamera, kung puwede. Babayaran kita, okay? Mas mura kasi diyan. Si Jane, ihanap mo daw siya ng Italian cookbook. Sa mga pamangkin mo, mga damit na lang o laruan. Mga libro puwede din. Mahilig naman silang magbasa. O sige. Excited ang lahat na makita ka!

Andy

*Subject: The gifts*

Dan,

*Here's what people are asking for here. Ready? This is a long list. ;-)*

*Get mom some bed covers. Dad is not asking for anything but just buy him some shirts for work. You have the same size. He needs those. As for me, get me some shoes and a digital camera, if you can. I will pay for it, okay? Because it's cheaper there. With regards to Jane, she says look for an Italian cookbook. For your nieces and nephews, clothes or toys. You can buy books too. They are fond of reading. Okay. Everyone is excited to see you!*

Andy

## **9H. CULTURE NOTE 2**

*Pasalubongs* are an important part of Filipino gift-giving culture. The verb root *salubong* means "to meet someone" or "to welcome someone." *Pasalubongs* are gifts that someone who has been on a trip somewhere gets for people back home. A short weekend or even a day trip somewhere would warrant gift-giving of this nature, and small items are bought: souvenirs, food, clothes, whatever may be the specialty of a given place. The longer the time spent away, the more gifts may be expected. Therefore, those millions of Filipinos living abroad preparing for a trip home often go through a ritual of frenzied shopping for gifts for friends and relatives. This can easily translate to finding gifts for several dozens of people. Sometimes roomier boxes are filled in place of cramped suitcases, some of them even sent months in advance. To come home empty-handed would be to break tradition. Filipinos love their *pasalubongs* but more importantly they love to please their loved ones with gifts.

There is a website for people looking to buy *pasalubongs* online. Check it out and learn more about the gift-giving culture of Filipinos: [filgifts.com](http://filgifts.com).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*tatlo mahal daan presyo magkano mura*

A. \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_ po itong t-shirt?

B. Dalawang \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ po.

A. Ang \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ naman. Walang mas \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B. Ito po. Isang daan lang. Maganda din 'yan.

A. Okey. Bigyan ninyo ako ng \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_.

B. Write the following numerals in Tagalog numbers:

1. 89 \_\_\_\_\_

2. 124 \_\_\_\_\_

3. 367 \_\_\_\_\_

4. 514 \_\_\_\_\_

5. 709 \_\_\_\_\_

6. 1963 \_\_\_\_\_

7. 1985 \_\_\_\_\_

C. Complete the following thank-you note by changing the verb root according to the form indicated in parentheses.

Lorna, salamat sa mga padala mo! 'Yung mga kuwadro (*i*- verb/*lagay*, completed) \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_ ko sa sala. Ang ganda at bagay na bagay! Tapos 'yung padala mong bestida kay Pamela, (*i*- verb/*suot*, completed) \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ niya agad sa party. Salamat din daw, at (-*an* verb/*sulat*, contemplated) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ka daw niya. (-*an* verb/*tingin*, contemplated) \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ko kung makakapunta ako diyan sa isang buwan, (-*an* verb/*dala*, contemplated) \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_ kita ng mga prutas. At saka (*i*- verb/*sulat*, infinitive) \_\_\_\_\_ (6) \_\_\_\_\_ mo din sa akin ang sukat ng mga anak mo—gusto ko silang (*i*- verb/*bili*, infinitive) \_\_\_\_\_ (7) \_\_\_\_\_ ng damit. Okay. Hanggang dito na lang muna. Maraming salamat ulit.

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) *Tulungan mo ako.* 2. a) *isang daan* 3. b) *mga sapatos* 4. *Magkano* means “how much.” 5. *Mahal* means “expensive.”

A. 1. *magkano* 2. *daan* 3. *mahal* 4. *mura* 5. *tatlo*

B. 1. *walumpu't siyam* 2. *isang daan at dalawampu't apat* 3. *tatlong daan at animnapu't pito* 4. *limang daan at labing apat* 5. *pitong daan at siyam* 6. *isang libo siyam na raan at animnapu't tatlo* 7. *isang libo siyam na raan at walumpu't lima*

C. 1. *inilagay* 2. *isinuot* 3. *susulatan* 4. *titingnan* 5. *dadalhan* 6. *isulat* 7. *ibili*

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

For your journal, imagine that you have been living in the Philippines and you are about to leave. You are buying *pasalubong* for your friends back home. Make a shopping list using words that you've learned in this lesson. Remember that for a lot of gift items, English words are used too. Then imagine that you are in a department store looking for these items and talking to different salespeople. Use the Tagalog phrases that you already know to create an imagined dialogue with these salespeople. Don't forget to use demonstrative pronouns, adjectives, and comparatives, when possible. Log these conversations in your journal. Happy shopping!

# LESSON 10

*Ano'ng masarap dito?*

What's good here?

In this lesson, you will learn how to use the Tagalog expression *gusto* (to want, to like) and similar verbs in different aspects. You will learn how to modify nouns with adjectives and phrases. You will also become familiar with restaurant expressions and Filipino cuisine in general. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up.

## 10A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

masarap	<i>delicious</i>
subukan (root subok)	<i>try (infinitive and command form)</i>
isda	<i>fish</i>
tubig	<i>water</i>
mainit na sabaw	<i>hot soup</i>
magbabayad (root bayad)	<i>will pay</i>
panghimagas	<i>dessert</i>
busog	<i>full, satisfied (relating to food)</i>
umupo (root upo)	<i>to sit</i>

## 10B. DIALOGUE

Sarah is from Zamboanga, a city in the Southern Philippines. She is in Manila attending a conference. For dinner one rainy night, she decides to go to a restaurant specializing in Filipino home-cooked meals. Let's listen in as she talks to the waiter.

**Sarah:** May libreng mesa para sa isa?

**Waiter:** Kahit saan po puwedeng maupo. Ito po ang menu.

Sarah: Salamat.

Waiter: Ano po ang gusto nila?

Sarah: Ano'ng masarap dito?

Waiter: Subukan po ninyo 'yung litson namin.

Sarah: Ay, hindi ako kumakain ng baboy.

Waiter: Ah, eh, isda po?

Sarah: Puwede rin. Ano 'tong Bicol Express?

Waiter: Maanghang po 'yan na may gata at may baboy din po.

Sarah: Ganoon ba? Itong escabecheng lapu-lapu na lang. Tapos gusto ko rin ng mainit na sabaw.

Waiter: Bulalo po, mayroon kami.

Sarah: Sige, paborito ko 'yun.

Waiter: Ano po ang gusto nilang inumin?

Sarah: Tubig lang. At saka dalhan mo rin ako ng kanin.

Waiter: Opo, kasama na po 'yun. Wala na po?

Sarah: Sige, manggang hilaw na may bagoong din. Tama na siguro 'yan.

*(After the meal)*

Sarah: Waiter, magbabayad na ako.

Waiter: Ayaw na po nila ng panghimagas?

Sarah: Hindi na lang. Busog na ako.

Waiter: Sige po. Nagustuhan ninyo po ba?

Sarah: Oo, masarap pero medyo maalat 'yung sabaw.

Waiter: Ay, sori ma'am. Ito na ho 'yung chit ninyo.

Sarah: Okey, salamat.

*Sarah: Is there a free table for one?*

*Waiter: Yes, ma'am, you can sit anywhere. Here's the menu.*

*Sarah: Thanks.*

*Waiter: What would you like?*

*Sarah: What's good here?*

*Waiter: Try our roast pig.*

*Sarah: Oh, I don't eat pork.*

*Waiter: Oh, how about fish?*

*Sarah: That's an idea. What's Bicol Express?*

*Waiter: It's spicy with coconut milk, and it has pork too.*

*Sarah: Really? I'll just have escabecheng lapu-lapu. Then I also want some hot soup.*

*Waiter: We have bulalo.*

*Sarah: Sure, that's my favorite.*

*Waiter: What would you like to drink?*

*Sarah: Just water. Bring me some rice, too.*

*Waiter: Yes, it's included. Anything else?*

*Sarah: Yeah, green mango with bagoong. That should be enough.*

*(After the meal)*

*Sarah: Waiter, I'm going to pay now.*

*Waiter: You don't want any dessert?*

*Sarah: That's okay. I'm already full.*

*Waiter: Okay. Did you like the food?*

*Sarah: Yes, it was delicious but the soup is a bit salty.*

*Waiter: Oh, sorry . . . Here's your check.*

*Sarah: Okay, thanks.*

## **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. To ask for the waiter's recommendation, Sarah asks

a) *Ano'ng gusto ko?*      b) *Ano'ng masarap dito?* c) *Nasaan ang mesa?*

2. She asks the waiter about which dish?

a) *litson*      b) *Bicol Express*      c) *bulalo*

3. In the end, what does she decide to eat?

a) *isda*      b) *baboy*      c) *sabaw*

4. *Masarap* means \_\_\_\_\_.

5. *Panghimagas* means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 10C. VOCABULARY

<b>baboy</b>	<i>pig, pork</i>
<b>bagoong</b>	<i>shrimp paste</i>
<b>bulalo</b>	<i>a kind of soup</i>
<b>chit</b>	<i>check, bill</i>
<b>dalhan (root dala)</b>	<i>bring (command form)</i>
<b>escabeche</b>	<i>pickled fried grouper fish</i>
<b>gata</b>	<i>coconut milk</i>
<b>hilaw</b>	<i>unripe, raw</i>
<b>inumin</b>	<i>drink</i>
<b>kanin</b>	<i>rice</i>
<b>kasama</b>	<i>with, included</i>
<b>litson/lechon</b>	<i>roast pig</i>
<b>maalat</b>	<i>salty</i>
<b>maanghang</b>	<i>spicy</i>
<b>magbabayad (root bayad)</b>	<i>will pay</i>
<b>mangga</b>	<i>mango</i>

## 10D. KEY PHRASES

Filipinos use the following phrases in a restaurant setting and to talk about food in general:

**Ano'ng masarap dito?**

*What's good here?*

**Gusto ko ng ...**

*I would like/I want ...*

... luto

*... to cook/cooked food*

... ulam

*... viand/main dish eaten with rice*

**Dalhan mo ako ng ...**

*Bring me some ...*

**Pakikuha ng ...**

*Get me a/an/some ...*

Bigyan mo ako ng . . .	<i>Give me a/an/some. . . .</i>
... asin	<i>... salt</i>
... paminta	<i>... pepper</i>
matamis	<i>sweet</i>
matabang	<i>bland</i>
malasa	<i>flavorful</i>
malutong	<i>crunchy</i>
mainit	<i>hot</i>
malamig	<i>cold</i>
Nagustuhan ko . . .	<i>I liked . . .</i>
Nagustuhan namin . . .	<i>We liked . . .</i>
karne	<i>meat</i>
baka	<i>cow, beef</i>
manok	<i>chicken</i>
gulay	<i>vegetable</i>

## 10E. CULTURE NOTE 1

Ancient Filipinos celebrated rice in oral lore, with several legends (*alamat*) each relating a version of its origins. Many rituals and festivals are also held in celebration of this crop, especially in the highland regions. In Tagalog, there are several words for rice: from *palay* (unhusked rice) to *bahaw* (left-over rice), not to mention literally a dozen more words that precolonial Filipinos used to describe the rice plant in different stages of growth. Even the root of the verb “to eat” (*kain*) is closely related to the word for cooked rice (*kanin*). For the Filipino, there is *kanin* and everything else eaten with it (*ulam*). The not-so-easily-translatable question “*Ano’ng ulam?*” might as well be asking what there is to be eaten with rice. Rice is the constant in the Filipino diet and deeply ingrained in the native psyche.

## 10F. GRAMMAR

### Using Inflection with Theme Focus

As we have seen before, to express desire (both “to like” and “to want”) in Tagalog, the word *gusto* is used. While this word is often uninflected, when it is used to mean “to like,” it is inflected for aspect. In the infinitive form, the prefix *ma-* and the suffix *-an* are used, and the vowel “*o*” is replaced with

a “u.” Since the verb root ends in a vowel, an “h” is added to the suffix. In the completed aspect, the prefix *ma-* is changed to *na-*. The contemplated aspect uses the infinitive form, with the first consonant and vowel of the root repeated:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED
magustuhan	nagustuhan	magugustuhan

The incomplete form “*nagugustuhan*” may be used, but only to emphasize the progressive nature of the action (liking):

**Tingnan mo. Nagugustuhan ng bata ang roller coaster.**  
*Look. The child likes/is liking the roller coaster.*

This kind of affixation is used with other similar verb roots where the focus is placed on the object:

ibig	<i>like (rare in common speech)</i>
subok	<i>try</i>
tikim	<i>taste (specific to food)</i>
lasa	<i>taste (use one's sense of taste)</i>
danas	<i>experience</i>

ROOT	INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED
ibig	maibigan	naibigan	maiibigan
subok	masubukan*	nasubukan	masusubukan
tikim	matikman*	natikman	matitikman
lasa	malasahan	nalasahan	malalasahan
danas	maranasan*	naranasan	mararanasan

\*Take note of the spelling change in these verbs.

**Nasubukan kong pumunta.**  
*I tried to go.*

**Naranasan kong mag-alaral.**  
*I experienced studying.*

## Modifying Nouns: A Review

We saw in Lesson 3 how the linkers *-ng* and *na* are used to modify nouns and pronouns. In the dialogue above, we saw more phrases that illustrate this modification.

**manggang hilaw** *unripe (green) mango*

**mainit na sabaw** *hot soup*

Remember that in these phrases the order of the words do not matter. These linkers permit the noun to come first and the adjective second, or vice-versa. Look at how reversing the order of the words in the phrases above doesn't change their meaning.

**hilaw na mangga** *unripe mango*

**sabaw na maiinit** *soup (that's) hot*

### **Modifying Nouns with Whole Phrases**

A whole phrase can also modify a single noun. If we link the noun "restaurant" with the phrase "(that's) on the corner," we will also use the same linkers (-ng or na) and rules as with simple adjectives.

**Ang restoran na nasa kanto.** *Ang nasa kantong restoran.*

*The restaurant that is on the corner.* *The corner restaurant.*

Here are other examples of phrases modifying a noun.

**Ang babaeng taga-Mindanao.**

*The woman who is from Mindanao.*

**Ang taga-Mindanao na babae.**

*The Mindanaoan woman.*

An adjective may also be modified by a verbal phrase using the same linkers.

**nilutong ulam** *food that was cooked/cooked food*

**ininom na tubig** *water that was drunk*

**dumating na bisita** *visitor who came*

**kinaing kanin** *rice that was eaten/eaten rice*

**biniling karne** *meat that was bought/bought meat*

**ginawang bahay** *house that was made*

**sinabing salita** *word that was said/said word*

## **10G. READING**

Read the following menu with names of Filipino dishes and observe the use of the markers -ng and na. Use this reading to try to discern more terms for food in Tagalog.

## PANG-UMPISA

Piniritong lumpia (giniling na baboy, carrots, singkamas, celery, sibuyas)  
Sariwang lumpia (ubod ng niyog, litsugas, hipon, baboy)  
Atsara  
Ensaladang mangga

## GULAY

Ginisang ampalayang may bagoong  
Ensaladang kangkong  
Ensaladang talong  
Pinakbet (kalabasa, talong, sitaw, bagoong)

## PANSIT

Pansit canton  
Pansit bihon

## KARNE

Crispy pata  
Litsong kawali  
Nilagang baka (baka, patatas)  
Putsero  
Pinapaitang kambing  
Sinigang na baboy  
Kare-kare (buntot ng baka, mani, sitaw, talong, petsay)

## MANOK

Adobong manok (manok, toyo, laurel, paminta, bawang)  
Dinuguang manok sa gata  
Pinaupong manok  
Sinampalukang manok (manok, dahon ng sampalok, sibuyas)  
Tinolang manok (manok, sayote, dahon ng sili, luya)

## ISDA

Inihaw na pusit  
Pinausukang tahong  
Relyenong bangus  
Daeng na bangus  
Kilawing isda

## PANGHIMAGAS

Halo-halo (hielo, ube, leche flan, ice cream, minatamis na saging, sago at gulaman, kaong, gatas)  
Minatamis na saging  
Ginataan  
Majablanca

## **FOR STARTERS/APPETIZERS**

*Fried spring roll (ground pork, carrots, turnips, celery, onions)*

*Fresh spring roll (hearts of palm, lettuce, shrimp, pork)*

*Atsara (pickled green papaya)*

*Mango salad*

## **VEGETABLES**

*Sauteed bitter melon with shrimp paste*

*Kangkong salad*

*Eggplant salad*

*Pinakbet (vegetable stew with squash, okra, eggplant, string beans, shrimp paste)*

## **NOODLES**

*Canton rice noodles*

*Bihon rice noodles*

## **MEAT**

*Crispy pata (deep-fried pork leg)*

*Litsong kawali (deep-fried pork belly)*

*Beef broth soup (beef, potatoes)*

*Beef stew*

*Bitter goat meat stew*

*Pork in sour soup*

*Kare-kare (ox tail soup, peanut butter, string beans, eggplant, Chinese cabbage)*

## **CHICKEN**

*Chicken adobo (chicken, soy sauce, bay leaves, pepper, garlic)*

*Chicken blood stew with coconut milk*

*Steamed whole chicken in a bed of salt*

*Chicken tamarind soup (chicken, tamarind leaves)*

*Chicken ginger soup (chicken, chayote, chili leaves, ginger)*

## **FISH**

*Broiled squid*

*Steamed mussels*

*Stuffed milkfish*

*Curried milkfish*

*Fish kilawin (marinated fish)*

## **DESSERT**

*Halo-halo (shaved ice, purple yam, leche flan, ice cream, sweetened bananas, tapioca pearls, gelatin, milk)*

*Sweetened bananas*

*Ginataan (warm coconut dessert soup)*

*Majablanca (rice dessert with corn)*

## 10H. CULTURE NOTE 2

A quick glance at any Filipino restaurant menu would reveal a cuisine with many influences: Malay, Chinese, Spanish, and American. Perhaps not as readily recognizable as other cuisines in the region, Filipino cuisine is unique in Asia for this same reason. Food historians venture to say that eighty percent of the cuisine is of Spanish influence. However, dishes that bear Spanish names merely take their inspiration from the cuisines of Spain and Mexico via the galleon trade, that profitable Spanish enterprise which transported goods on ships sailing annually between Acapulco and Manila. Prepared with local ingredients and cooking techniques, these dishes are rarely faithful versions of the original. A perfect example of this is what is considered the national dish, the *adobo* (which in Spanish is a type of marinade used to both flavor and preserve meat), a simple meat stew with soy sauce and vinegar. The mainstay of course is rice—as it is in the rest of Asia; it is the staple food, eaten three times a day and used as a main ingredient for many sweet delicacies. To learn more about Filipino cuisine and to find specific recipes for *adobo* and other Filipino dishes, visit [www.kusinaatbp.com/default.php](http://www.kusinaatbp.com/default.php).

### EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*sabaw kanin masarap tubig panghimagas inumin*

A. Umorder na tayo. Gutom na ako.

B. Ano'ng \_\_\_\_\_ (1) \_\_\_\_\_ dito?

A. Marami. Gusto ko adobo.

B. Ako kare-kare na lang. At saka dalawang \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ kasi gutom rin ako. Gusto ko rin ng mainit na \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Ano'ng gusto mong \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B. \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_ lang para sa akin.

A. Ayaw mo ng \_\_\_\_\_ (6) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B. Ayoko. Nagdyeyeta ako, eh.

B. Fill in each blank with the correct **infinitive** form of the verb root in parentheses using the *ma-/an* affixes:

1. Pumunta tayo sa kainan na 'yun para (subok) \_\_\_\_\_ mo ang pagkain sa Mindanao.

2. Gusto kong (tikim) \_\_\_\_\_ ang sabaw na niluto mo kanina.
3. Sana (gusto) \_\_\_\_\_ nila ang pagkain sa bahay.
4. Hindi ko (lasa) \_\_\_\_\_ ang paminta (*pepper*) sa adobo mo.
5. Para (danas) \_\_\_\_\_ mo ang buhay sa Maynila, bumisita ka dito.

C. Using elements from columns A and B, create logical phrases by using *-ng* and *na* linkers:

A	B
masarap	libro
mahal	kanin
mainit	pera
nasa mesa	tiyo
nasa Maynila	bahay
taga-Amerika	pagkain

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. b) *Ano'ng masarap dito?* 2. b) *Bicol Express* 3. a) *isda* 4. *Masarap* means "delicious." 5. *Panghimagas* means "dessert."

### Exercises

- A. 1. masarap 2. kanin 3. sabaw 4. inumin 5. tubig 6. panghimagas
- B. 1. masubukan 2. matikman 3. magustuhan 4. malasahan  
5. maranasan

C. Some possible answers:

pagkaing masarap  
mahal na libro  
mainit na kanin  
tiyong taga-Amerika  
perang nasa mesa  
bahay na nasa Maynila

### **INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL**

For this challenge, imagine yourself in a scene at a Filipino restaurant where you are talking to the waiter as you pore over the items on the menu and order your food. Ask him or her questions about the dishes and ask for his recommendations. Say what you want to drink or have for dessert. At the end of the meal, make some comments about the food and ask for the check, etc. Make use of the items from the reading or an actual restaurant menu from the Internet or even from a Filipino restaurant you might have come across in your travels or in your neighborhood. You may also do some research on the Internet about some dishes that you may be curious about and also to learn more about Filipino cuisine. Try some of the recipes to become even more familiar with the various dishes and ingredients. For example, you may visit the following website: [www.emanila.com/food](http://www.emanila.com/food).

## LESSON

# 11

*Masakit!*

**It's painful!**

This next lesson is about health and sickness. In it, you will learn ways to express things that happen to people, such as illnesses or accidents. You will also become familiar with words relating to the human body and various health conditions. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up!

### 11A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

nangyari (root yari)	<i>happened</i>
naglalaro (root laro)	<i>are/were playing</i>
braso	<i>arm</i>
masakit	<i>painful</i>
Aray!	<i>Ouch!</i>
pakiramdam	<i>feeling</i>
sugat	<i>wound</i>
mukha	<i>face</i>

### 11B. DIALOGUE

Carlo is a typical Filipino teenager—crazy about basketball. After suffering a bad fall while playing with friends, he visits his family doctor. Let's listen to his conversation with the nurse before the doctor sees him.

Nurse: O, Carlo, ano'ng nangyari sa 'yo?

Carlo: Naglalaro kami ng basketbol tapos bumagsak ako. Napilayan yata.

Nurse: Saan?

Carlo: Sa kaliwang braso.

Nurse: Sige, tingnan natin. Saan masakit? Dito?

Carlo: Aray! Oo, diyan. Nadaganan din ako ng kaibigan ko.

Nurse: Hindi mo magalaw?

Carlo: Hindi, eh. Masakit.

Nurse: Kailangan nating i-eksray 'yan. Ano'ng pakiramdam mo ngayon?

Carlo: Okey lang.

Nurse: Eh, bakit may mga sugat ka din sa mukha mo?

Carlo: Napaaway din, doon sa laro.

Nurse: Talaga? Sige, gagamutin muna natin 'yan. Baka magkaimpeksyon. Tapos, titingnan ka na ni doktor.

Carlo: Salamat.

Nurse: Ikaw talaga, bata ka. Huwag ka munang maglaro ng basketbol. Laging may nangyayari sa 'yo ...

*Nurse: Oh, Carlo! What happened to you?*

*Carlo: We were playing basketball and I fell. Apparently I sprained it.*

*Nurse: Where?*

*Carlo: My left arm.*

*Nurse: Okay, let's look at it. Where does it hurt? Here?*

*Carlo: Ouch! Yes, right there. My friend also fell on me.*

*Nurse: You can't move it?*

*Carlo: No. It hurts.*

*Nurse: We need to x-ray that. How are you feeling right now?*

*Carlo: Just fine.*

*Nurse: But why do you have scrapes on your face too?*

*Carlo: I also got into a fight, during the game.*

**Nurse:** *Really? Okay, we'll treat those first. They might get infected. Then Doc will see you.*

**Carlo:** *Thanks.*

**Nurse:** *You're such a kid. Don't play basketball for a while. Something always happens to you . . .*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. To find out what happened to Carlo, the nurse asks him  
a) *Saan masakit?*      b) *Kamusta ka?*      c) *Ano'ng nangyari sa 'yo?*
2. Carlo says he might have sprained his  
a) *braso*      b) *mukha*      c) *sugat*
3. To ask how Carlo is feeling, the nurse asks  
a) *Saan masakit?*      b) *Ano'ng pakiramdam*      c) *Bakit may sugat ka? mo ngayon?*
4. *Masakit* means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Aray!* means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 11C. VOCABULARY

baka	<i>perhaps, might</i>
bumagsak ( <i>root bagsak</i> )	<i>fell</i>
eksray	<i>x-ray</i>
gagamutin ( <i>root gamot</i> )	<i>will treat, will cure</i>
huwag	<i>don't (negative word in a command)</i>
i-eksray	<i>to x-ray</i>
lagi	<i>always</i>
laro	<i>game</i>
magalaw ( <i>root galaw</i> )	<i>to move</i>
magkaimpeksyon	<i>to get an infection</i>
nadaganan ( <i>root dagan</i> )	<i>to have something fall on oneself</i>
napaaway ( <i>root away</i> )	<i>got into a fight</i>
napilayan ( <i>root pilay</i> )	<i>to have something sprained</i>

titinan (*root* tingin)

*will look at*

yata

*apparently, it seems*

## 11D. KEY PHRASES

Filipinos use the following words and phrases to talk about the body and health conditions:

Ano'ng pakiramdam mo? *How do you feel?*

Masakit ang \_\_\_\_\_ ko. *My \_\_\_\_\_ hurts.*

ulo *head*

noo *forehead*

mukha *face*

mata *eye*

ilon *nose*

tenga *ear*

bibig *mouth*

ngipin *tooth*

leeg/batok *neck*

balikat *shoulder*

dibdib *chest*

likod *back*

braso *arm*

kamay *hand*

daliri *finger*

binti *leg*

tuhod *knee*

paa *feet*

May . . . ako *I have . . .*

sakit *illness, sickness*

lagnat *fever*

ubo *cough*

sipon *cold*

trangkasó	<i>flu</i>
kalusugán	<i>health</i>
mabuting kalusugán	<i>good health</i>
masama ang kalusugán	<i>in bad health</i>

## 11E. CULTURE NOTE 1

An overwhelming number of Filipinos pursue jobs in health care in countries where there is a shortage of workers in this field. In the United States, for example, Filipinos now represent the largest percentage of Asian nurses, and the number continues to grow. Europe, particularly the United Kingdom, has also begun to recruit nurses heavily from the Philippines to ease their own severe nursing shortage. Aside from being highly skilled and fluent in English, Filipino nurses are known to be hardworking professionals and natural caregivers with excellent bedside manner. However, as the world opens its doors to them and an overwhelming number of Filipino health care professionals take advantage of the opportunity, Philippine health care pays its own heavy price.

## 11F. GRAMMAR

### Expressing “to Happen”

To express “to happen” in Tagalog, the root *yari* is used and affixed as a *mang-* verb:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>mangyari</b>	<b>nangyari</b>	<b>mangyayari</b>	<b>nangyayari</b>

To add the information of “to whom” something happens, the markers *sa* or *kay* are used. Remember that *kay* is used for personal names, and *sa* is used for all other nouns and SA pronouns:

**Ano’ng nangyari sa ‘yo?**

*What happened to you?*

**May nangyayari sa bahay.**

*Something is happening at home.*

**Bakit nangyari ito kay Dave?**

*Why did this happen to Dave?*

**Mangyayari ito bukas.**

*This will happen tomorrow.*

## **Magka- Affix**

The idea of someone getting, catching, or acquiring something—voluntarily or involuntarily—can be expressed with the *magka-* affix.

As an example, let's take the idea of getting sick, which is involuntary. Observe what happens to the root word *sakit* (which is also a noun that means sickness or disease) when it is affixed to express different aspects, with a focus on the actor:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>magkasakit</b>	<b>nagkasakit</b>	<b>magkakasakit</b>	<b>nagkakasakit</b>

Using the *magka-* affix, catching or having the following diseases can also be expressed:

lagnat	<i>fever</i>
trangkasos	<i>flu</i>
sipon	<i>cold</i>
ubo	<i>cough</i>
pulmonya	<i>pneumonia</i>
impeksyon	<i>infection</i>

Let's take the word *lagnat* (fever) as an example:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>magkalagnat</b>	<b>nagkalagnat</b>	<b>magkakalagnat</b>	<b>nagkakalagnat</b>

This affixation can also be used to express having or acquiring something voluntarily. Observe the use of this affix with some nouns you have learned:

**Magkakapera ka.**  
*You will have money.*

**Nagkaanak siya.**  
*She had a child.*

**Magkakabahay na tayo.**  
*We will now have a house.*

**Gusto niyang magkapamilya.**  
*He/She wants to have a family.*

**Puwede kang magkakotse.**  
*You can have a car.*

We have already learned *may* (have) and *mayroon* (there is, there are). With the *magka-* affix, this same idea can be expressed in different aspects. The root word used in this expression is *doon* (there). Observe how it is affixed (with the spelling change, from *d* to *r*):

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>magkaroon</b>	<b>nagkaroon</b>	<b>magkakaroon</b>	<b>nagkakaroon</b>

**Nagkaroon sila ng anak.**

*They had a child.*

**Magkakaroon ng problema sa opisina.**

*There will be a problem at the office.*

**Gusto nilang magkaroon ng bahay sa probinsya.**

*They want to have a house in the province.*

### The Affixes *Ma-/an*

We have already seen how the combination of the prefix *ma-* and the suffix *-an* are used with certain verbs (such as *gusto*, *nagustuhan*, etc.). These affixes can also be used to express an accidental occurrence where the focus is on the person to whom this occurrence happens.

Let's take the accidental occurrence of a sprain:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>mapilayan</b>	<b>napilayan</b>	<b>mapipilayan</b>	<b>napipilayan</b>

**Napilayan ako sa paa.**

*I sprained my foot. (lit., I got sprained on my foot.)*

**Mapipilayan ka sa braso.**

*You will sprain your arm. (lit., You will get sprained on your arm.)*

Here are some more roots that can be used with this affixation:

**bali** *bend, break*

**sugat** *wound*

**sira** *break*

**nakaw** *steal*

**wala** *lose*

Let's look at these affixed roots used in complete sentences:

**Mababalian ka ng braso.**

*You will break your arm.*

**Nasugatan ka?**

*Did you get wounded?*

**Nasiraan siya ng kotse.**

*His car broke down.*

**Nanakawan sila ng pera.**

*They were robbed of money.*

### **Negative Commands**

To express a negative command, a different negative word, *huwag* (don't), is used instead of *hindi*, and the word order is as follows (notice the addition of the linker *-ng* to the pronoun):

<i>Huwag</i> +	<i>Pronoun</i> +	<i>Verb</i>
<i>Huwag</i>	<i>kang</i>	<i>maglaro.</i>
<i>Don't</i>	<i>you (sing.)</i>	<i>play.</i>
<i>Huwag</i>	<i>tayong</i>	<i>pumunta doon.</i>
<i>Don't</i>	<i>we</i>	<i>go there.</i>
<i>Huwag</i>	<i>kayong</i>	<i>magkasakit.</i>
<i>Don't</i>	<i>you (pl.)</i>	<i>get sick.</i>

In Tagalog, the verb in negative commands can either be in the infinitive form, as in the sentences above, or in the contemplated form, specifying that the command is for a future time.

**Huwag kang maglalaro.**

*Don't play (in the future).*

**Huwag kang pupunta doon.**

*Don't go there (in the future).*

**Huwag kang magkakasakit.**

*Don't get sick (in the future).*

### **11G. READING**

Read the following horoscope and look for the affixes that you have learned as well as some negative commands. Try to figure out the meaning of the text and look up some words you do not recognize.

**Aries (Marso 21–Abril 19)** *Huwag munang magbiyahe sa buwan na ito at posible na may mangyaring hindi maganda. Ingatan ang pakiramdam sa mga maaring makasakit sa iyo.*

**Leo (Hulyo 23–Agosto 22)** Huwag masyadong makinig sa payo ng mga tao. Mag-ingat sa mga tao sa paligid mo at maaring may sama silang hangad. Magkakaroon ka ng problema tungkol sa relasyon mo sa isang mahal sa buhay pero madali mo itong malulutas.

**Sagittarius (Nobyembre 22–Disyembre 21)** Mahirap magkasakit kaya't ingatan ang sariling kalusugan. Maaring magkapera ka sa katapusan ng linggo. Magkakaroon ka rin ng pagkakataon para makatulong sa isang kaibigan. Huwag mag-alala sa mga plano mo tungkol sa trabaho.

**Taurus (Abril 20–Mayo 20)** Maganda ang linggong ito para sa iyo. Huwag magdesisyon agad tungkol sa isang relasyon. Mayroon kang sorpresa na darating na magpapasaya sa 'yo. Bigyan ng atensyon ang isang problema sa kalusugan.

**Virgo (Agosto 23–Septyembre 22)** Huwag gumawa ng maraming plano sa linggong ito. Magpahinga para hindi magkasakit. Kailangan kang magkaroong ng bagong libangan, at pag-ukulan ng pansin ang pamilya. Makinig ka sa isang kasama sa trabaho.

**Aries (March 21–April 19)** *Don't travel during this month as it's possible that something not so nice might happen. Guard your feelings from people who may hurt you.*

**Leo (July 23–August 22)** *Don't listen too much to people's advice. Be mindful of some people around you as they may have bad intentions. You will have a problem with your relationship with a loved one but you will be able to solve it quickly.*

**Sagittarius (November 22–December 21)** *It's a bad time to get sick so take care of your own health. You may receive money at the end of the month. You will also have an opportunity to help a friend. Don't worry about your plans pertaining to your job.*

**Taurus (April 20–May 20)** *This is a good week for you. Don't make a decision about a relationship right away. There is a surprise coming that will make you happy. Pay attention to a health problem.*

**Virgo (August 23–September 22)** *Don't make too many plans this week. Rest so you don't get sick. You need to have a new hobby and pay attention to your family. Listen to a coworker.*

## 11H. CULTURE NOTE 2

When it comes to sports, basketball is arguably the favorite pastime of Filipinos. Since their first exposure to the game during the American era, Filipinos have been avid fans, and, in spite of their short stature, once dominated the sport in the Asian region. The country even gained slots in a few Olympic Games and placed third in a world championship. Today it remains strong as the country's number one spectator sport, edging out other more height-irrelevant ballgames such as soccer, football, or baseball, which still only have small followings. The Philippine Basketball Association, the first professional league in Asia, continues to pack sports coliseums with loyal followers of all ages. There are both small-town and corporate leagues with no shortage of enthusiastic participants and supporters. In squatter areas, there are improvised courts—patches of land or asphalt with the ring hoisted on a lumber pole towering over the shanties and shirtless adolescents doing lay-ups like Michael Jordan.

### EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*mainit gamot masakit lagnat doktor pakiramdam noo*

A: May \_\_\_(1)\_\_\_ yata ako.

B: Bakit? Ano'ng \_\_\_(2)\_\_\_ mo?

A: Medyo masama. Eto, hipuin (touch) mo ang \_\_\_(3)\_\_\_ ko.

B: Oo nga. \_\_\_(4)\_\_\_!

A: \_\_\_(5)\_\_\_ din ang lalamunan ko.

B: Pumunta ka agad sa \_\_\_(6)\_\_\_ para humingi ng \_\_\_(7)\_\_\_.

B. Change the following affirmative commands into the negative form:

1. Uminom ka ng gamot. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Maglaro tayo bukas. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Kumain ka ng kanin. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Gumising kayo ng maaga. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Pumunta tayo doon. \_\_\_\_\_

C. Look for Tagalog words referring to body parts.

A	D	I	B	D	I	B	U	L	O	T
T	L	B	R	A	T	E	N	G	A	U
L	E	A	O	B	M	U	K	H	A	B
I	E	T	T	A	K	L	H	B	N	I
K	G	O	U	A	A	P	I	R	I	B
O	B	K	H	G	M	A	T	A	N	I
D	I	N	O	O	A	U	A	S	O	G
B	N	O	D	O	Y	R	N	O	R	O
E	T	O	B	A	L	I	K	A	T	G
B	I	T	I	L	O	N	G	E	N	G

## ANSWER KEY

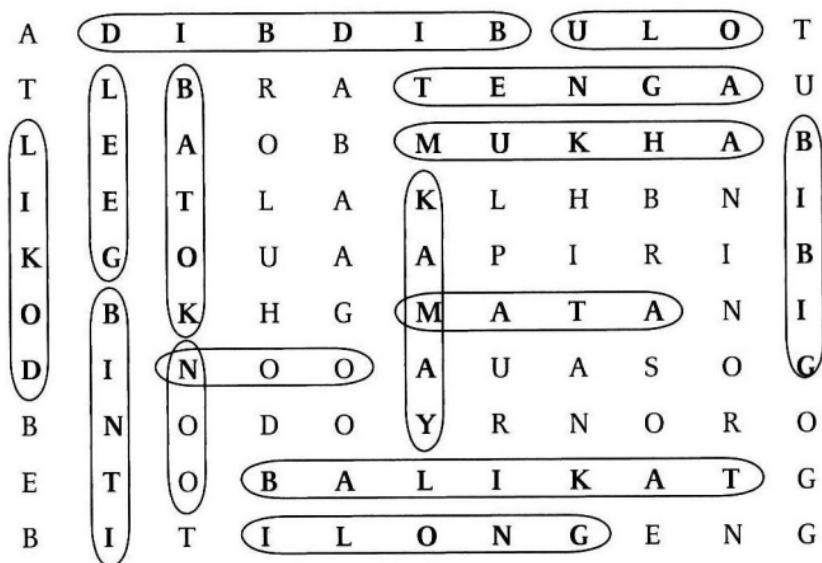
### Comprehension Practice

1. c) *Ano'ng nangyari sa 'yo?*    2. a) *braso*    3. b) *Ano'ng pakiramdam mo ngayon?*    4. *Masakit* means "painful."    5. *Aray!* means "Ouch!"

### Exercises

- A. 1. lagnat    2. pakiramdam    3. noo    4. mainit    5. masakit    6. doktor  
7. gamot
- B. 1. *Huwag kang uminom ng gamot.*    2. *Huwag tayong maglaro bukas.*  
3. *Huwag kang kumain ng kanin.*    4. *Huwag kayong gumising ng maaga.*  
5. *Huwag tayong pumunta doon.*

C.



### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

Bad things sometimes do happen to good people. Try to think of some unfortunate events that have happened to you (or you may imagine others that have not). Write an entry in your journal with the title, *“Mga ilang masasamang pangyayari”* (A few bad happenings), in which you enumerate certain bad things that you have experienced using the verbs and affixes you’ve learned in this lesson.

In this lesson, you will learn how to talk about running errands using another form of affixation. You will also be able to express obligation in Tagalog and use words to mark the time of an action in a sentence. Let's begin by learning some key words.

**12A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP**

tulong	<i>help</i>
dolyar	<i>dollar</i>
bangko	<i>bank</i>
palitan	<i>exchange rate</i>
pagupitan	<i>hair salon</i>
ninong	<i>godfather</i>
kasal	<i>wedding</i>

**12B. DIALOGUE**

Ricky is back in the Philippines from the U.S. for a visit in his native Cebu, where he has been asked to be a sponsor at a wedding. He is staying in a hotel before the wedding and asking the concierge for information as he plans his day around a couple of errands he has to do.

Ricky: Hi! Magandang hapon!

Concierge: Magandang hapon din po, sir.

Ricky: Kailangan ko ang tulong mo.

Concierge: Ano ho 'yun?

Ricky: Una, gusto kong magpapalit ng dolyar. Saan ba puwede?

Concierge: Diyan po sa bangko sa baba, nagpapalit sila.

Ricky: Ah, okey. Alam mo ba kung magkano na ba ang palitan ngayon?

Concierge: Sandali lang sir, titingnan ko . . . Sir, mga singkuwentaydos po.

Ricky: Salamat. Gusto ko ring magpagupit. Mayroon bang malapit na pagupitan dito?

Concierge: Doon po sa mall po, marami.

Ricky: Magkano ba ang gupit ngayon?

Concierge: Depende ho. Mga dalawa o tatlong daan siguro. Ano pa po, sir?

Ricky: Ah, ninong din ako sa kasal sa isang linggo. Kailangan kong magpatahi ng barang tagalog. May sastre ka bang alam?

Concierge: Mayroon po pero baka magahol na kayo sa oras. Dapat bumili na lang kayo ng yari na.

Ricky: Oo, siguro nga. O sige, salamat sa tulong mo, ha? Puwede ding magpatawag ng taxi?

Concierge: Sige po. Ngayon din po.

*Ricardo: Hi! Good afternoon!*

*Concierge: Good afternoon to you too, sir.*

*Ricky: I need your help.*

*Concierge: What is it, sir?*

*Ricky: First, I need to change dollars. Where can I do that?*

*Concierge: At the bank downstairs, they do it.*

*Ricky: Oh, okay. Do you know how much the exchange rate is now?*

*Concierge: Just a second, sir, I'll find out for you . . . Sir, it's around fifty-two.*

*Ricky: Thanks. I also want to get a haircut. Is there a hair salon nearby?*

*Concierge: At the mall, there are a bunch of places.*

*Ricky: How much is a haircut nowadays?*

*Concierge: It depends. Around two to three hundred maybe. Anything else, sir?*

*Ricky: Oh yeah, I'll be a sponsor at a wedding next week. I need to have a traditional Filipino shirt made. Do you know of a tailoring shop?*

*Concierge: Yes, I do, but you may not have enough time. You should just buy one that's ready-made.*

*Ricky: Yeah, that's probably the right thing to do. Okay, thanks for your help. Can you also have someone call a taxi for me?*

**Concierge:** *Sure, sir. Right away.*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:



## 12C. VOCABULARY

barong tagalog	<i>traditional Filipino shirt</i>
dapat	<i>must, should</i>
depende	<i>it depends</i>
magahol sa oras	<i>not have enough time</i>
magpagupit ( <i>root</i> gupit)	<i>to get a (hair)cut</i>
magpapalit ( <i>root</i> palit)	<i>to change, to exchange</i>
magpatahi ( <i>root</i> tahi)	<i>to have something tailored</i>
magpatawag ( <i>root</i> tawag)	<i>to have someone call</i>
ngayon din	<i>right now, right this moment</i>

sa isang linggo	<i>next week</i>
sastre	<i>tailor</i>
yari	<i>ready-made</i>

## 12D. KEY PHRASES

Filipinos use the following phrases to ask for help and to talk about errands:

Kailangan ko ang tulong mo/ninyo.	<i>I need your help.</i>
Mayroon/wala ba ditong ... ?	<i>Is there a ... /Is there no ... around here?</i>
Saan ba puwedeng ... ?	<i>Where can one ... ?</i>
... maghulog ng sulat	<i>... mail a letter</i>
... bumili ng ...	<i>... buy ...</i>
... magpapalit ng pera	<i>... exchange money</i>
... magpalaba	<i>... get laundry done</i>
... magpaplantsa	<i>... have clothes ironed</i>
... magpakuha ng retrato	<i>... have a photo taken</i>
... magpagupit	<i>... get a (hair)cut</i>
... magpamasahé	<i>... get a massage</i>
... magpagawa ng ...	<i>... have ... made/repairs</i>
... magpaayos	<i>... have ... fixed</i>

## 12E. CULTURE NOTE 1

### The Barong Tagalog

The traditional Filipino attire for men is the *barong tagalog*. Part shirt, part outer garment (*baro* is Tagalog for dress or garment), the *barong* owes its humble origins to pre-colonial Filipinos, but has since evolved into its modern-day elegant permutations, heavily or sparsely embroidered, natural or dyed. It is traditionally made with a sheer, silky fabric woven from natural ecru fibers from the pineapple plant or raw silk called *jusi*. Worn loose and untucked, with a white undershirt and dark trousers, the *barong* makes for ideal tropical weather formal wear.

## 12F. GRAMMAR

### The *Magpa-* Verb Affix

The *magpa-* affixation with verbs expresses actions that one allows to be done to, for, or on him- or herself. These verbs, like the *maka-* set of verbs, are actor-focused verbs and follow the same pattern. The affixation for these verbs, using the verb roots *gupit* (cut) and *gawa* (do, make), is as follows:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>magpagupit</b>	<b>nagpagupit</b>	<b>magpapagupit</b>	<b>nagpapagupit</b>
<b>magpagawa</b>	<b>nagpagawa</b>	<b>magpapagawa</b>	<b>nagpapagawa</b>

**Saan ka nagpagupit?**

*Where did you have your hair cut?*

**Nagpagawa ako ng bahay.**

*I had a house built.*

Here are several other examples of actions used with this affixation:

<b>magpakashal</b>	<i>to get married</i>
<b>magpakuha ng retrato</b>	<i>to have a picture taken</i>
<b>magpatahi</b>	<i>to have an article of clothing sewn, tailored</i>
<b>magpaayos</b>	<i>to have something fixed</i>
<b>magpalaba</b>	<i>to have clothes washed</i>
<b>magpaluto</b>	<i>to have something cooked</i>
<b>magpagising</b>	<i>to have someone wake someone up</i>
<b>magpapalit ng pera</b>	<i>to have money exchanged</i>
<b>magpaturo</b>	<i>to have someone teach someone</i>

*Magpa-* is also called the causative affix, as it is used to express actions that cause something to be done or to make something happen to someone else, as in the following examples:

<b>magpakain</b>	<i>to cause someone to be fed, to feed</i>
<b>magpaiyak</b>	<i>to make someone cry</i>
<b>magpasaya</b>	<i>to make someone or something happy</i>
<b>magpalungkot</b>	<i>to make someone or something sad</i>

## Expressing Obligation

Now let's learn how to express obligation or "must," "should," and "ought to" in Tagalog. To express this concept, the modal verb *dapat* is used, which behaves just like the other modal verbs we have learned so far (*gusto*, *puwede*, and *kailangan*). It is normally followed by a verb in the infinitive form, as in the following examples:

**Dapat pumunta ka sa bangko.**

*You should go to the bank.*

**Dapat mag-alaro ako.**

*I should study.*

**Dapat magpapalit tayo ng pera.**

*We should get money exchanged.*

Modal verbs like *dapat* may also be used with verbs in other aspects or tenses:

**Dapat kumain ka kahapon.**

*You should have eaten yesterday.*

**Dapat kumakain ka ngayon.**

*You should be eating now.*

## Markers *Na* and *Pa*

*Na* and *pa* are markers that are used in a sentence to indicate when an action is completed. In general, *na* means "already" and *pa* means "yet" or "still." They are generally placed after the first word in a sentence, except when the subject of the sentence is a pronoun.

**Kumain na ako.**

*I have already eaten.*

**Natutulog pa siya.**

*She's still sleeping.*

**Estudyante ka pa.**

*You're still a student.*

When used with commands, *na* can be translated to mean "now" and *pa*, "some more," indicating the continuation of the action expressed by the verb base. Remember, *na* and *pa* will always follow the pronoun.

**Kumain ka na.**

*Eat now.*

**Matulog ka pa.**

*Sleep some more.*

Used with the word *wala* (nothing), *na* means "no more" or "any more."

**Wala na akong problema.**

*I don't have a problem anymore.*

**Wala na** tayong tubig.  
*We don't have any more water.*

**Wala na** kayong pagkain.  
*You (pl.) have no more food.*

## 12G. READING

Read the following diary entry of a girl who is planning her wedding, and make note of the use of *magpa-* verb forms we have seen in this lesson:

*Dear Diary:*

Mahirap din talaga ang magpapakasal. Ito ako, sumasakit ang ulo sa dami ng dapat gawin. Dalawang buwan pa naman bago ang kasal pero kailangan kong makahanap na ng gown. Hindi din ako sigurado kung ano ang gusto ko. Mabuti pa si Roel nagpagawa na ng barong. Gusto ng nanay na magpatahi ako kay Tiya Carmen pero gusto ko sa iba na lang para mas maganda. Saan kaya puwede? Siyempre gusto ko ring magpapayat ng kaunti bago ang kasal. Problema din pala kung saan ako magpapaayos. Dapat simple lang dahil umaga naman ang kasal. Magpakuot kaya ako o magpakuay ng buhok? Baka hindi magustuhan ni Roel. Ewan ko ba. Bahala na. Magpapatulong na lang ako kina Marie at Chona.

*Dear Diary:*

*It's really hard to get married. Here I am, getting headaches from the many things I have to do. There are still two months to go before the wedding but I do need to find a wedding gown soon. I'm not even sure what I like. At least Roel has had a barong made. Mom wants me to have Aunt Carmen make the gown but I want to have someone else make it so it will be nicer. Where can it be? Of course, I also want to lose some weight before the wedding. Where I should go for hair and makeup is also a dilemma. It should be simple because the wedding is in the morning. Should I have my hair curled or dyed? Roel may not like it. I don't know. Whatever. I'll just have Marie and Chona help me.*

## 12H. CULTURE NOTE 2

The concept of an extended family in Filipino society transcends bloodlines through what is known as the *compadrazgo* system. Part of the country's Catholic colonial legacy, this deeply entrenched tradition allows extending kinship to people outside the family through religious rituals such as baptisms and marriages. A family friend, a business associate, or a mere acquaintance may be asked to be a *ninong* (godfather) or *ninang* (godmother) of a child or an engaged couple, effectively making this person a co-parent

(*kumpadre* from the Spanish *compadre*) and a part of the family, with some of the same privileges and obligations of a blood relation. As godparents participate in these rituals, they enter into a pact—part religious covenant and part social contract—in which they promise to assume the role of spiritual guide and benefactor to their godchildren. Their gift, offered on the day of the ceremony, is usually monetary in nature, and is seen both as a symbol and the first installment of their pledge to help in the future of their godchildren. This may mean contributing financially toward the godchild's education, assisting with a job placement, helping with medical care, and with other practical needs. Several godparents are chosen, usually on the basis of their perceived ability to perform these functions. The more power and wealth, the better: the town mayor, a government official, a more affluent distant relative, or even the boss or patron of one of the parents. For more information about the *compadrazgo* system and other Filipino social values, visit [countrystudies.us/philippines/41.htm](http://countrystudies.us/philippines/41.htm).

## EXERCISES

A. Based on the context of each sentence, choose a verb base from the list below to add to the *magpa-* prefix. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*gupit gawa kuha tawag luto bili palit*

1. May alam ka bang barberong magaling? Gusto kong magpa \_\_\_\_\_ bukas.
2. Gutom na ang mga bata. Magpa \_\_\_\_\_ ka nga ng ulam kay Clara.
3. Kailangan makaalis si Leny ngayon na. Magpa \_\_\_\_\_ ka ng taksi.
4. Dapat magpa \_\_\_\_\_ ka ng retrato para sa pasaporte mo.
5. Hindi ba ninong ka sa kasal ni June? Kailan ka magpapa \_\_\_\_\_ ng damit?
6. Pupunta ba kayo sa tindahan mamaya? Sige, magpapa \_\_\_\_\_ ako ng regalo para sa nanay.

B. Give the equivalent of the following sentences in English:

1. Dumating na ba si Ate Belen? \_\_\_\_\_
2. May tao pa ba sa sala? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Wala na kaming pera. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Pupunta pa kami sa bahay mo. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Aalis na ba kayo? \_\_\_\_\_

C. Create at least five phrases that express obligation using an element from each column (*dapat* + a form of the following verb roots + an actor-focused pronoun):

A	B	C
	punta	ako
	kain	ka
Dapat	tulog	siya
	bili	tayo
	dalaw	kayo
	basa	kami
		sila

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) *magpapalit ng pera*
2. b) *singkuwentaydos*
3. c) *magpatawag ng taxi*
4. *Tulong* means "help."
5. *Palitan* means "exchange rate."

### Exercises

- A. 1. gupit    2. luto    3. tawag    4. kuha    5. gawa    6. bili

- B. 1. Has Ate Belen already arrived/come?    2. Are there still people in the living room?    3. We don't have any more money.    4. We're still going to your house.    5. Are you leaving now/already?

- C. Some possible answers:

Dapat pumunta ako sa bahay mo.

Dapat bumili ka ng kotse.

Dapat dumalaw kayo dito.

Dapat magbasa sila ng libro.

Dapat matulog siya mamaya.

Dapat kumain ka ng prutas.

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

For this challenge, imagine that you have been invited to a very important occasion while visiting the Philippines. You have just arrived in the country and will be having a busy few days. Make a list of errands that you have to do, using Tagalog verbs in the neutral or infinitive form. Include the common tasks that a tourist may have to do: exchange money, ask for a wake-up call, call for a taxi, etc. Remember to use the causative affix *magpa-* to express yourself. Try using the markers *na* and *pa* to indicate what you've already done or have yet to do. Have fun making your list!

The focus of this lesson is free time and leisure activities. In this lesson, you will learn how to talk about plans, make suggestions, and express uncertainty. First, let's do a vocabulary warm-up.

### 13A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

sa wakas	<i>at last</i>
balak	<i>plan</i>
yata	<i>maybe, perhaps (marker of uncertainty)</i>
ulit	<i>again</i>
magsimba ( <i>root simba</i> )	<i>to go to church</i>
mananghalian ( <i>root tanghalian</i> )	<i>to have lunch</i>
magpasyal ( <i>root pasyal</i> )	<i>to take a stroll</i>

### 13B. DIALOGUE

#### Audio Introduction

At breakfast on Friday morning, Mr. and Mrs. Lacson are talking about their plans for the weekend. Let's listen to the couple's conversation.

**Mr. Lacson:** Ay, sa wakas, Biyernes na!

**Mrs. Lacson:** Oo nga. Ano'ng gusto mong gawin mamayang gabi?

**Mr. Lacson:** Dito na lang tayo sa bahay para makapagpahinga. Gusto mo bang lumabas?

**Mrs. Lacson:** Hindi. Humiram na lang tayo ng DVD.

Mr. Lacson: Eh bukas? May balak ba ang mga bata?

Mrs. Lacson.: Gusto yata nilang pumunta sa mall.

Mr. Lacson: Ulit? Kapupunta lang natin doon. Ano daw ang gagawin nila?

Mrs. Lacson: Manonood yata sila ng sine.

Mr. Lacson: Kung gusto mo, puwede din tayong lumabas bukas.

Mrs. Lacson: Maglaro kaya tayo ng tennis? Matagal na rin tayong hindi naglalaro.

Mr. Lacson: Mabuti pa nga. Kailangan natin ng ehersisyo. Eh sa Linggo?

Mrs. Lacson: Dapat sa umaga tayo magsimba. Pagkatapos, puwede tayong mananghalian kina Nanay.

Mr. Lacson: O sige. Hindi nga tayo nakasimba noong isang linggo.

Mrs. Lacson: Tapos pagkakain, ano'ng gusto mong gawin?

Mr. Lacson: Pumunta kaya tayo sa mall.

Mrs. Lacson: Sa mall? Bakit? May kailangan kang bilhin?

Mr. Lacson: Wala. Para magpalamig lang at magpasyal.

*Mr. Lacson: At last, it's Friday!*

*Mrs. Lacson: That's right. What do you want to do later tonight?*

*Mr. Lacson: Let's just stay home so we can rest. Do you want to go out?*

*Mrs. Lacson: No. Let's just rent a DVD.*

*Mr. Lacson: How about tomorrow? Do the kids have plans?*

*Mrs. Lacson: It seems they want to go to the mall.*

*Mr. Lacson: Again? We just went there. What are they going to do there?*

*Mrs. Lacson: I think they're going to watch a movie.*

*Mr. Lacson: If you want, we can also go out tomorrow.*

*Mrs. Lacson: How about if we play tennis? We haven't played in a while.*

*Mr. Lacson: That's a good idea. We need the exercise. What about Sunday?*

*Mrs. Lacson: We should go to church in the morning. Then we can have lunch at Mom's.*

*Mr. Lacson: Okay. We didn't get to go to church last week.*

*Mrs. Lacson: After we eat, what do you want to do?*

*Mr. Lacson: What if we go to the mall?*

*Mrs. Lacson: The mall? Why? Do you need to buy something?*

*Mr. Lacson: No. Just to cool off and walk around.*

### **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. Where does Mr. Lacson want to go on Friday night?  
a) *sa mall*      b) *sa bahay lang*      c) *sa sinehan*
2. According to Mrs. Lacson, their kids may want to  
a) *humiram ng DVD*      b) *pumunta sa mall*      c) *maglaro*
3. On Sunday, Mrs. Lacson suggests that they should  
a) *kumain*      b) *maglaro ng tennis*      c) *magsimba*
4. *Balak* means \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Magpahinga* means \_\_\_\_\_.

### **13C. VOCABULARY**

ehersisy	<i>exercise</i>
humiram (root hiram)	<i>to borrow, to rent</i>
magpalamig (root lamig)	<i>to cool off</i>
mamayang gabi	<i>later tonight</i>
matagal na	<i>it's been a while since</i>
noong isang linggo	<i>last week</i>
pagkatapos	<i>afterwards</i>
sine	<i>movie</i>
yata	<i>maybe, perhaps (marker of uncertainty)</i>

## 13D. KEY PHRASES

Filipinos use the following phrases to talk about pastime activities and to make plans or suggestions:

Ano'ng balak mong gawin?	<i>What do you plan to do?</i>
Manood kaya tayo ng sine?	<i>What if we watch a movie?</i>
Manood kaya tayo ng TV?	<i>What if we watch TV?</i>
Kung magpasyal kaya tayo sa park?	<i>What if we take a stroll in the park?</i>
Gusto mong maglaro ng ...?	<i>Do you want to play ...?</i>
Gusto mong makinig ng ...?	<i>Do you want to listen to ...?</i>
Lumabas kaya tayo nitong gabi?	<i>What if we go out tonight?</i>
Pagkatapos, ano'ng gusto mong gawin?	<i>Afterwards, what do you want to do?</i>
Dito na lang tayo sa bahay.	<i>Let's just stay home.</i>
Gusto kong....	<i>I want to....</i>
... magpahinga	<i>... rest</i>
... maglibang	<i>... have a diversion/indulge in something leisurely</i>
... magpasyal sa ...	<i>... take a stroll at ...</i>
... maglakad sa ...	<i>... walk at ...</i>
... magikot-ikot sa	<i>... walk around</i>
libangan	<i>diversion, leisure</i>

## 13E. CULTURE NOTE 1

For many Filipinos, the word “mall” is a verb used to describe what has become the leisure activity of choice, especially among urban dwellers. Huge shopping malls have become major landmarks both in Metro Manila and in the provinces—often replacing public parks in popularity. Thousands congregate in malls on any given day, with crowds swelling during the heavy shopping seasons when hours are often extended to midnight. Although their popularity is an index of an emerging consumerist culture and capitalist growth, the mall is not just a shopping mecca but also an air-conditioned haven, providing a sure respite from the tropical heat.

## 13F. GRAMMAR

### Exhortations

To make a suggestion in English, the contraction “let’s” is used with any verb. In Tagalog, this is expressed with the neutral or infinitive form of any verb, with the inclusive third-person plural pronoun *tayo* for actor-focused sentences and *natin* for theme-focused sentences. Look at the following examples:

**Pumunta tayo sa sinehan.**

*Let’s go to the movies.*

**Dalawin natin ang Nanay.**

*Let’s visit Mom.*

**Maglaro tayo ng basketbol.**

*Let’s play basketball.*

**Sabihin natin ang totoo.**

*Let’s tell the truth.*

### Expressing Uncertainty

The markers *yata* and *kaya* are added to a sentence to express uncertainty. They typically appear after the first word, except when the subject of the sentence is the pronoun *ka*.

**Yata** is used to express uncertainty in statements:

**Maglalaro yata sila ng tennis sa Sabado.**

*Maybe they will play tennis this Saturday.*

**Aalis ka yata mamaya.**

*You’re probably leaving later.*

**Kaya** is used to express uncertainty in questions:

**Pupunta kaya sila dito?**

*I wonder if they will come here.*

**Ano kaya ang gagawin natin?**

*I wonder what we are going to do.*

When used with the command form of verbs, *kaya* softens the command and turns it into a suggestion:

**Manood kaya tayo ng sine?**

*What if we watch a movie?*

**Basahin mo kaya itong libro?**

*How about you read this book?*

## Recent Perfective

To express action that has just occurred, another type of affixation is used. This affixation consists of using the prefix *ka-* and repeating the first syllable of the base.

<b>kapupunta</b>	<i>has/have just gone</i>
<b>kaluluto</b>	<i>has/have just cooked</i>
<b>kagigising</b>	<i>has/have just woken up</i>
<b>kaaalis</b>	<i>has/have just left</i>
<b>kalalagay</b>	<i>has/have just put</i>
<b>kalalaro</b>	<i>has/have just played</i>

Observe that for this construction, object case pronouns and the word *lang* (only, just) is used:

**Kalalabas lang namin.**

*We have just gone out.*

**Kakakain ko lang ng hapunan.**

*I have just eaten dinner.*

## Expressing “Before” and “After”

To express “before” with verbs and to create phrases such as “before going,” “before eating,” etc., the word *bago* is used in Tagalog. Observe the position of words in the following sentences:

**Kumain sila **bago** sila naglaro. (Bago sila naglaro, kumain sila.)**  
*They ate before they played. (They ate before playing.)*

**Pumunta ka dito **bago** ka umalis. (Bago ka umalis, pumunta ka dito.)**  
*Come here before you leave. (Come here before leaving.)*

To express “after” with a verb, the prefix *pagka-* is used. This affixation is only used with the object case personal pronouns:

**Pagkakain natin, lumabas tayo. (Lumabas tayo pagkakain natin.)**  
*After we eat/after eating, let's go out.*

**Tumawag ka **pagkarating** mo. (Pagkarating mo, tumawag ka.)**  
*Call after you arrive.*

The word *pagkatapos* may also be used with actions that have been completed. They are used only with NG (object) pronouns. Observe the first sentence above with this word instead of the affix *pagka-*:

**Pagkatapos nating kumain, lumabas tayo.**  
*After we eat, let's go out.*

## 13G. READING

Read the following message a teenager posted on her personal blog, in which she talks about a fun, busy weekend she's had with her *balikbayan* friends.

**Sobra ang weekend na 'to.** Friday night, pagkادating ko galing sa trabaho, tumawag sila Vicky naghahanap ng gimmick. Gusto kong magpahinga dahil pagod ako, so sabi ko pumunta na lang kaya sila sa bahay para manood ng video dahil kahihiram ko lang ng pelikula. Gusto daw nila lumabas. Wow, kararating lang nila sa Pilipinas, grabe. Wala yata silang jetlag. Anyway, mga ilang minuto lang nasa bahay na sila. Kagagaling lang pala nila sa Makati, nagmall daw sila. "Ano'ng gusto ninyong gawin?" Magkaraoke daw. Sabi ko kung gusto nila pumunta na lang kami sa Malate, kumain pagkatapos pumunta sa club para makinig ng jazz. Ayaw nila. Malayo daw, so nagpunta na lang kami sa Libis at alas kuwatro na ng umaga kami nakauwi!

*This weekend is too much. Friday night, when I arrived from work, Vicky called looking for something fun to do. I wanted to rest because I was tired so I told them to come to my house to watch a video because I had just rented a film. They said they wanted to go out. Wow, they just had just arrived in the Philippines. It looks like they don't have jetlag. Anyway, in just a couple of minutes they were at my house. They had just been to Makati, went to the mall, they said. "What do you want to do?" They said go to a karaoke place. I said if they wanted to, we could go to Malate, and after eating, to a club to listen to jazz. They didn't want to. It was too far they said so we went to Libis and it was already 4 in the morning when we got home!*

## 13H. CULTURE NOTE 2

Filipinos have always strongly valued spiritual belief alongside a belief in family and community as a result of their pre-colonial animist past. As objects of their two colonizers' missionary zeal, each one espousing its own brand of Christianity, Filipinos today are a deeply religious people. Far from being nominally Christian, Filipinos practice their religion as a way of life, ranking third in world church attendance behind Nigeria and Ireland, according to recent studies. A typical Filipino goes to church once a week; the most devout go more than once.

The Philippines also has the noteworthy distinction as Asia's only Christian nation. Ninety percent of the population considers itself Christian, the majority of them Catholics and the rest ascribing to several Protestant denominations and nationalized sects. On Sundays, churches are packed with worshippers of every age, and even in shopping malls and public parks, it

is not rare to stumble upon crowds of people congregated around a priest saying mass. Signs of a vibrant religiosity abound everywhere: a *jeepney* driver making the sign of the cross as he passes a church, announcements for bible studies at entrances of gated subdivisions, images of Christ and Mary on the walls of both humble and palatial homes.

But Filipino religiosity also has a vibrant Islamic side. The present Filipino Muslims comprise around five percent of the population and are the second largest group, after the Catholics, with a common cultural identity. Islamic presence in the Philippines dates back to the 14th century when Islamic seafaring traders arrived in the southern islands. By the time the Spanish colonizers arrived, the religion had taken root in the islands, especially in the Sulu Archipelago, and had reached as far north as Manila. The Muslims' legendary resistance of the Western conquerors—personified in Lapu-lapu, the Rajah of Mactan Island who killed Ferdinand Magellan in a bloody battle—persisted throughout the time of Spanish rule. The islands were never fully Christianized. Today the majority of Filipino Muslims live in the southern islands, but there are significant Muslim communities in all major cities.

For more information about religion in the Philippines, visit [www.livinginthephilippines.com/philippine\\_articles/sense\\_being\\_filipino/people\\_hope.html](http://www.livinginthephilippines.com/philippine_articles/sense_being_filipino/people_hope.html).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*wakas balak kaya sine pahinga matagal yata*

A: Sa (1)       Sabado na! Ano'ng (2)       mong gawin mamayang gabi?

B: Kumain (3)       tayo sa labas?

A: Huwag na. Mag (4)       na lang tayo. Kung gusto mo, bukas manood tayo ng (5)      .

B: Wala (6)       ng magandang pelikula ngayon. Pumunta na lang tayo sa mall.

B. Change each word base into an exhortation using the affix in parentheses and *tayo* as the subject.

1. punta (um) \_\_\_\_\_

2. kain (um) \_\_\_\_\_

3. kuha (um) \_\_\_\_\_

4. laro (mag) \_\_\_\_\_
5. pasyal (mag) \_\_\_\_\_
6. tulog (ma) \_\_\_\_\_

C. Read the following sentences and supply the recent perfective form of the word base in parentheses.

1. Gutom pa ako kahit (kain) \_\_\_\_\_ ko lang.
2. Bakit ayaw niyang sumama sa amin sa mall? Kasi (dating) \_\_\_\_\_ niya lang galing doon.
3. Alam na niya ang balita. (Sabi) \_\_\_\_\_ ko lang sa kanya.
4. Mainit ang ulo ng bata dahil (gising) \_\_\_\_\_ lang niya.
5. Hindi ako pupunta sa bahay nila. (Dalaw) \_\_\_\_\_ ko lang doon.
6. Nasira ulit 'yung kotse? Oo, kahit (gawa) \_\_\_\_\_ lang.

D. Change the following sentences to express uncertainty with either *yata* or *kaya*:

1. Humiram sila ng video.

---

2. Maglaro tayo ng basketbol?

---

3. Ano ang gagawin niya?

---

4. Magpapasyal sila dito bukas.

---

5. May problema ka.

---

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. b) *sa bahay lang* 2. b) *pumunta sa mall* 3. c) *magsimba* 4. *Balak* means "plan." 5. *Magpahinga* means "to rest."

### Exercises

A. 1. wakas 2. balak 3. kaya 4. pahinga 5. sine 6. yata

B. 1. Pumunta tayo. 2. Kumain tayo. 3. Kumuha tayo. 4. Maglaro tayo.  
5. Magpasyal tayo. 6. Matulog tayo.

C. 1. kakakain    2. kararating    3. kasasabi    4. kagigising    5. kadadalaw  
6. kagagawa

D. 1. Humiram yata sila ng video.    2. Maglaro kaya tayo ng basketbol?  
3. Ano kaya ang gagawin niya?    4. Magpapasyal yata sila dito bukas.  
5. May problema ka yata.

### **INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL**

For this journal entry, imagine that you and a friend are planning to spend a weekend together. Write a conversation with this person in which you suggest several activities for the weekend. Remember to use the structures and vocabulary that you have learned from this lesson as much as possible.

# LESSON

# 14

*Bago ka dito?*

Are you new here?

In this lesson, you will learn what to say to someone you are meeting for the first time in a workplace setting. You will be able to express knowing and meeting someone as well as reciprocal actions. You will also become familiar with turning verbs into nouns, a very common practice in Tagalog. Let's do a vocabulary warm-up first!

## 14A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

bago	<i>new</i>
pumalit ( <i>root</i> palit)	<i>replaced (verb)</i>
matagal	<i>a long while</i>
paglipat	<i>move (noun)</i>
nasayan ( <i>root</i> sanay)	<i>got accustomed to, got used to</i>
kilala	<i>known (adj.); acquaintance (n.)</i>
kaopisina	<i>office mate</i>

## 14B. Dialogue

Flor has just been hired for a managerial position in a multinational company. Melvin meets her for the first time in the company cafeteria and strikes up a conversation with her. Let's listen in.

Melvin: Hi. *Bago ka dito?*

Flor: Oo, *kasisimula ko lang ngayon.*

Melvin: *Teka, ikaw si Flordeliza Santos, 'yung pumalit kay Mr. Landicho?*

Flor: Oo, *ako nga. Flor na lang.*

Melvin: Hi, Flor. *Ako si Melvin. Taga-Accounting. Kamusta ang unang araw mo?*

**Flor:** Mabuti. Medyo nangangapa pa. Matagal ka na dito?

**Melvin:** Mga apat na taon na. Saan ka dating nagtatrabaho?

**Flor:** Galing ako sa Davao, assistant manager ako doon.

**Melvin:** Talaga? Kamusta naman ang paglipat?

**Flor:** Medyo mahirap din dahil nasanay ako sa buhay doon.

**Melvin:** Magugustuhan mo dito sigurado. May mga kilala ka na?

**Flor:** 'Yung boss ko pa lang, si Mrs. Quintana. Nakipag-meeting na ako sa kanya kanina.

**Melvin:** Ah, oo, siya ang nagsabi sa akin na may bagong manager. Lalabas kami mamaya, suweldo kasi ngayon. Baka gusto mong sumama para makilala mo ang mga kaopisina ko.

**Flor:** Sige. Saan kayo magkikita?

**Melvin:** Sa lobby, mga alas-singko y medya.

**Flor:** O sige. Magkita tayo doon.

*Melvin: Hi. Are you new here?*

*Flor: Yeah, I just started today.*

*Melvin: Wait, you're Flordeliza Santos, the one who replaced Mr. Landicho?*

*Flor: Yeah, that's me. Just call me Flor.*

*Melvin: Hi, Flor. I'm Melvin. From Accounting. How's your first day?*

*Flor: Fine. Still kind of feeling my way around. Have you been here for a while?*

*Melvin: Around four years already. Where were you working previously?*

*Flor: I came from Davao; I was an assistant manager there.*

*Melvin: Really? And how was the move?*

*Flor: A little tough, because I got used to life there.*

*Melvin: You will definitely like it here. Do you have people you know already?*

*Flor: Just my boss, Mrs. Quintana. I met with her earlier today.*

*Melvin: Oh yeah, she's the one who told me that there's a new manager. We're going out later since it's payday. You might want to come so you can meet my coworkers.*

*Flor: Okay. Where are you meeting?*

*Melvin: In the lobby, at around 5:30.*

*Flor: Okay. Let's see each other there.*

### **Comprehension Practice**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:

1. Flor is new on the job and today is her \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *unang araw*      b) *unang linggo*      c) *pangatlong araw*
2. Melvin has been working in the company for about \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *isang taon*      b) *dalawang taon*      c) *apat na taon*
3. Melvin invites Flor to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *kumain*      b) *lumabas*      c) *makilala ang boss niya*
4. *Kilala* means \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *know*
5. *Kaopisina* means \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *sure*

### **14C. VOCABULARY**

araw	<i>day</i>
buhay	<i>life</i>
dati	<i>former, formerly</i>
kanina	<i>earlier today, a little while ago</i>
kasisimula ( <i>root simula</i> )	<i>has/have just started</i>
magkita ( <i>root kita</i> )	<i>to see each other, to meet</i>
makilala ( <i>root kilala</i> )	<i>to meet, to get to know</i>
mamaya	<i>later</i>
nangangapa ( <i>root kapa</i> )	<i>feeling one's way around, groping</i>
sigurado	<i>sure, definite</i>

sumama ( <i>root sama</i> )	<i>to come, to go with</i>
suweldo	<i>salary</i>
teka	<i>wait (shortened form of “maghintay ka”)</i>

## 14D. KEY PHRASES

Filipinos use the following phrases to welcome and get to know a new colleague at work and extend an invitation to this person.

Bago ka dito?	<i>Are you new here?</i>
Matagal ka na dito?	<i>Have you been here long?</i>
Kamusta ang unang araw/ linggo/buwan mo?	<i>How's your first day/week/month?</i>
Saan ka dating nagtatrabaho?	<i>Where were you working previously?</i>
Kilala mo si . . . ?	<i>Do you know . . . ?</i>
May kilala ka na?	<i>Do you have people you know?</i>
Gusto mong makilala si . . . ?	<i>Do you want to meet . . . ?</i>
Magugustuhan mo dito.	<i>You will like it here.</i>
Baka gusto mong . . .	<i>You may want to . . .</i>
... sumama sa amin sa . . . ?	<i>... go with us to . . . ?</i>
... lumabas?	<i>... go out?</i>
... makilala si/ang mga . . . ?	<i>... meet/get to know . . . ?</i>
Magkita tayo sa . . .	<i>Let's meet each other at . . .</i>

## 14E. CULTURE NOTE 1

A newcomer typically receives an enthusiastic welcome at the workplace consistent with the Filipino brand of hospitality. The usual pleasantries are exchanged, and an interest in getting to know the new person is shown with the number of questions he or she is asked on this first encounter. Then comes the customary invitation to join the new colleagues, perhaps at a local hangout, after work. This gesture could be a first step to include the newcomer in the group as well as a test of this person's sense of *pakisama* or camaraderie—that Filipino brand of *esprit de corps* and another valued trait in this highly group-oriented culture.

## 14F. GRAMMAR

### Expressing “to Know” or “to Meet Someone”

The root word *kilala* is used to express “to know (someone).” It is identical to *gusto* in form, meaning that it is not a verb but functions as one, and it is not inflected according to aspect or focus. Remember to use the subject pronoun for the person who is known and the object pronoun for the knower, as with *alam* (“to know something”) in Lesson 6.

**Kilala mo ako?**

*Do you know me? (lit., Am I known to you?)*

**Kilala kita?**

*Do I know you?*

**Kilala sila ng nanay mo.**

*Your mother knows them.*

**Hindi ko siya kilala noon.**

*I didn't know him then.*

This same root *kilala* can be affixed as a *ma*-verb to express meeting someone for the first time:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>makilala</b>	<b>nakilala</b>	<b>makikilala</b>	<b>nakikilala</b>

Take a look at the following examples:

**Nakilala ko siya at nakilala niya ako.**

*I met him/her and he/she met me.*

**Makikilala niya sila.**

*He/She will meet them.*

**Nakilala ako ni Mr. Reyes.**

*Mr. Reyes met me.*

### Expressing Joint and Reciprocal Actions

In Tagalog, a different set of affixes is used in order to express an action performed by someone with others (such as “to speak with,” “to play with,” “to dance with,” “to fight with,” etc.) where there is reciprocity, meaning the action is performed back to the subject. Observe the roots *usap* (talk, speak) and *kita* (see, meet) with *makipag*- affixation according to the different aspects:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
<b>Makipag-usap</b>	<b>Nakipag-usap</b>	<b>Makikipag-usap</b>	<b>Nakikipag-usap</b>
<b>Makipagkita</b>	<b>Nakipagkita</b>	<b>Makikipagkita</b>	<b>Nakikipagkita</b>

Read the following examples (and observe the use of the prepositions *sa* and *kay* to express “with”):

**Nakipagkita siya sa mga empleyado.**

*He/She met with the employees.*

**Nakikipag-usap ako kay Mr. Simon.**

*I'm speaking with Mr. Simon.*

Here are examples of other roots that can be affixed with *makipag-*:

ROOT	MAKIPAG-	MEANING
laro	<b>makipaglaro</b>	<i>to play with</i>
kilala	<b>makipagkilala</b>	<i>to make an acquaintance with</i>
away	<b>makipag-away</b>	<i>to fight with</i>
kaibigan	<b>makipagkaibigan</b>	<i>to make friends with</i>
talo	<b>makipagtalo</b>	<i>to argue with</i>
laban	<b>makipaglaban</b>	<i>to fight with</i>
ugnay	<b>makipag-ugnay</b>	<i>to connect with</i>
sayaw	<b>makipagsayaw</b>	<i>to dance with</i>

You may also use certain English words with this affix:

meeting	<b>makipagmeeting</b>	<i>to meet with</i>
---------	-----------------------	---------------------

The suffix *-an* is added to some *makipag-* verbs to imply the reciprocal or collective nature of an action without the explicit mention that the action is done with a group of people.

Take a look at the following examples:

**Nakipagsayawan kami kagabi.**

*We danced (with some people) last night.*

**Nakipag-inuman sila.**

*They were drinking (with other people).*

**Ayaw naming makipaglabanan.**

*We don't want to fight (with anybody).*

## Forming Nouns from Root Words

Some root words in Tagalog can be used by themselves as a noun (*ganda* “beauty”; *tulog* “sleep”). We have also seen how some of them can be affixed to form either a verb or an adjective (*maganda* “beautiful”; *matulog* “to sleep”).

Root words can also be “nominalized” (turned into a noun) using a set of affixes such as *pag-* and *pagka-*. This is very similar to forming the gerund, or “-ing” ending, in English.

Let’s first look at this group of Tagalog roots that you have learned so far:

<b>dating</b>	<i>come, arrive</i>
<b>dalaw</b>	<i>visit</i>
<b>gising</b>	<i>wake up</i>
<b>punta</b>	<i>go</i>
<b>akyat</b>	<i>climb</i>
<b>baba</b>	<i>descend, go down</i>
<b>sulat</b>	<i>write</i>
<b>inom</b>	<i>drink</i>
<b>nood</b>	<i>view, watch</i>
<b>sabi</b>	<i>tell, say</i>

Now let’s add the prefix *pag-* to convert some of them into nouns. Observe the resulting meaning.

<b>ang pagdating</b>	<i>the coming, the arrival</i>
<b>ang pagpunta</b>	<i>the going, the coming</i>
<b>ang pag-inom</b>	<i>the drinking</i>
<b>ang pagnood</b>	<i>the viewing, the watching</i>
<b>ang pagsabi</b>	<i>the telling</i>

**Problema ang pag-inom niya.**  
*His drinking is a problem.*

**Madalas ang pagpunta niya dito.**  
*His coming here is often.*

**Maligayang pagdating!**  
*Happy arrival!*

With the prefix *pagka-*, word roots are also turned into nouns, but the resulting noun emphasizes the manner in which the action expressed in the root word is done. Observe the following examples:

**Magaling ang pagkasulat niya.**  
*The way he wrote it is good.*

**Hindi ko gusto ang pagkasabi mo.**  
*I don't like the way you said (it).*

### **Using Verbs as Nouns**

Another unique and common feature of Tagalog is the nominalization of verbs. Any affixed verb can be turned into a noun, allowing it to have different functions in a sentence. Wherever the use of relative pronouns ("what," "the person(s) who," "the thing that," "that which," etc.) is required in English, nominalized verbs are used instead in Tagalog.

Nominalized verbs are used as the subject of the sentence and marked with *ang/ang mga*:

**Siya ang pumalit kay Mr. Torres.**  
*He/She is the one who replaced Mr. Torres.*

**Nasaan ang mga dumating?**  
*Where are those (the people) who arrived?*

**Nabasa ko ang sinulat mo.**  
*I read what (the thing that) you wrote.*

Nominalized verbs can also have an objective or locative function when used with the markers *sa* or *ng*:

**Humahanap kami ng humahanap ng trabaho.**  
*We are looking for (someone who is) looking for a job.*

**Nagkasakit siya sa kinain niyang isda.**  
*He got sick from the fish he ate.*

## **14G. READING**

Read the following letter of an advice columnist to one of her readers and observe the use of nominalized verbs, the *makipag-* set of verbs, and the use of *kilala*:

Dear Ramon,

**Salamat sa pagsulat mo. Sa palagay ko mas mabuti sa iyo ngayon ang makinig sa mga kaibigan. Alam kong mahirap ang nararamdam mo pero ito rin ang dahilan kung bakit hindi ka muna dapat magsimula ng bagong relasyon kaagad. Makipagkaibigan ka muna dito sa nakilala mo sa trabaho para makilala mo siyang mabuti.**

Pero ang mas importante ay makilala mo ring mabuti ang sarili mo bago ka makipagrelasyon para hindi maulit ang masakit na karanasan mo. At may kasabihan tayo na ang mga mabubuting bagay ay dumarating sa mga naghihintay, kaya maghintay ka muna at darating din ang hinahanap mo.

Yours truly,

Ate Carmen

Dear Ramon,

*Thanks for writing. I think it's better for you to listen to friends at this time. I know that what you're feeling is hard, but this is also the reason why you shouldn't start a new relationship right away. Just be friends with this person you've just met at work so that you will get to know her more. But what's more important is that you get to know yourself well before having a relationship so that your painful experience will not be repeated. We have a saying that says that "good things come to those who wait," so wait first and what you're looking for will come.*

Yours truly,

Ate Carmen

## 14H. CULTURE NOTE 2

To appreciate the status of women in contemporary Philippine society, one needs to consider both the matriarchal nature of indigenous societies and the influence exerted by a medieval brand of patriarchy over centuries of colonial rule. History saw Filipino women with an elevated status in society, as exemplified in the precolonial *babaylans*, or priestesses, legendary queens and princesses, and fearless revolutionaries and suffragists. In the Spanish era, they were nonentities who were denied the right to citizenship, and in the American era, the right to vote. The present-day status of the Filipina to some extent still reflects these historical contradictions. At the same time, significant strides have been made in putting the Philippines on the map, especially in Asia, as a model of gender equality. Women's access to education and jobs, particularly in traditionally male-dominated fields, has increased dramatically, and their economic contributions are up to record levels. A recent UN report estimates that women make up about 35 percent of the total number of administrators and managers in the Philippines, a figure that is one of the highest in the world. Women have also become more visible in politics, where increasing numbers of them serve as civil servants or hold important government posts. At one point in a recent administration, almost a third of ambassadors were women. Significant numbers run for public office, with some of them topping electoral results, most notably in senatorial races. The country has already elected two female presi-

dents, an accomplishment very few modern democracies have managed. To find out more about the role and status of women in the Philippines, visit [www.country-studies.com/phillippines/the-role-and-status-women.html](http://www.country-studies.com/phillippines/the-role-and-status-women.html).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*sumama suweldo kaopisina bago katagal kilala galing*

A: Ana, \_\_\_\_\_ (1) mo na ba si William? \_\_\_\_\_ (2) siya dito, \_\_\_\_\_ (3) sa Ortigas branch.

B: Hi, William! Ako si Ana Lopez, taga-Marketing. Kamusta?

C: Mabuti, salamat.

B: Gaano \_\_\_\_\_ (4) ka na dito?

C: Mga isang buwan na.

B: Ah, ganoon? Lalabas nga pala kami ng mga \_\_\_\_\_ (5) ngayong gabi. Gusto mong \_\_\_\_\_ (6) ?

C: Oo, sige, para makilala ko sila. Saan kayo pupunta?

B. Fill in each blank with the correct infinitive form of the verb in parentheses using the *makipag-* affix:

1. (kilala) Dapat \_\_\_\_\_ ka sa mga kaibigan ko.

2. (talo) Ayaw kong \_\_\_\_\_ sa meeting bukas.

3. (sayaw) Gusto mo bang \_\_\_\_\_ kay Ronaldo?

4. (kita) Kailangan nating \_\_\_\_\_ sa mga kliyente mamaya.

5. (usap) Tumawag ako para \_\_\_\_\_ sa kanya.

6. (away) Huwag kang \_\_\_\_\_ sa mga kaopisina mo.

C. Answer each question affirmatively in a complete sentence:

1. Kilala ninyo ako? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Kilala niya sila? \_\_\_\_\_

3. Kilala mo siya? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Kilala ka nila? \_\_\_\_\_

5. Kilala niya ako? \_\_\_\_\_

6. Kilala mo kami? \_\_\_\_\_

D. Rewrite each of the following sentences using the nominalized verb construction according to the model:

**Model: *Pumunta ako sa Maynila. Ako ang pumunta sa Maynila.***  
**I went to Manila. I'm the one who went to Manila.**

1. Sumama siya sa biyahe. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ginawa niya ito. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Nagpahinga kami. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Nagustuhan ko ito. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Nagpakilala siya sa akin. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Naghintay sila sa atin. \_\_\_\_\_

## **ANSWER KEY**

### **Comprehension Practice**

1. a) *unang araw* 2. c) *apat na taon* 3. b) *lumabas* 4. *Kilala* means "know someone." 5. *Kaopisina* means "office mate" or "coworker."

### **Exercises**

- A. 1. kilala 2. bago 3. galing 4. katagal 5. kaopisina 6. sumama
- B. 1. makipagkilala 2. makipagtalo 3. makipagsayaw 4. makipagkita  
5. makipag-usap 6. makipag-away
- C. 1. Oo, kilala ka namin. 2. Oo, kilala niya sila. 3. Oo, kilala ko siya.  
4. Oo, kilala nila ako. 5. Oo, kilala ka niya. 6. Oo, kilala ko kayo.
- D. 1. Siya ang sumama sa biyahe. 2. Ito ang ginawa niya. 3. Kami ang nagpahinga.  
4. Ito ang nagustuhan ko. 5. Siya ang nagpakilala sa akin.  
6. Sila ang naghintay sa atin.

### **INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL**

Using an Internet search engine, type in the *makipag-* set of affixes (*makipag*, *nakipag*, *nakikipag*, or *makikipag*) to search for words and see them used in real contexts. Jot down discoveries in your journal. Then think of a list of things that you have done with people in the last couple of weeks and write them down in complete sentences using the same affixes. Have fun!

The theme of this lesson is vacation and travel. In this lesson, you will learn how to narrate in the past and describe the weather. You will also be able to express wishes and become familiar with some more Tagalog markers. Let's start with a vocabulary warm-up!

### 15A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

bakasyon	<i>vacation</i>
kulang	<i>not enough, lacking</i>
biyahe	<i>trip</i>
eroplano	<i>airplane</i>
dagat	<i>sea</i>
umuulan (root ulan)	<i>raining</i>
panahon	<i>weather, season, time</i>
sulit	<i>worth it</i>

### 15B. DIALOGUE

Nellie has just come back from a short vacation with her family, and she's telling Ben, a neighbor, about it. Let's listen to what she says about how everything went.

Ben: Nellie, dumating na pala kayo? Kamusta ang bakasyon sa Bohol?

Nellie: Nag-enjoy kami ng husto! Maganda pala talaga doon.

Ben: Talaga? Kailan kayo dumating?

Nellie: Noong Lunes pa.

Ben: Gaano katagal ang biyahe?

Nellie: Mga isang oras lang sa eroplano.

Ben: Ano'ng ginawa ninyo doon?

Nellie: Marami. Ayaw ngang umuwi ng mga bata. Kulang daw ang tatlong araw.

Ben: Saan kayo tumira?

Nellie: Sa isang resort sa tapat ng beach.

Ben: Talaga? Kamusta naman 'yung beach?

Nellie: Maganda! Ang linaw ng tubig, asul na asul at hindi maalon.

Ben: Eh ang panahon? Kasi dito sa Maynila umuulan.

Nellie: Doon hindi. Umuulan ng kaunti sa umaga pero tumitigil din. Tapos umaaraw na. Mainit din pero presko siyempre sa tabi ng dagat.

Ben: Ano pa'ng ginawa ninyo?

Nellie: 'Yung mga bata gusto palagi sa dagat lang kaya habang naliligo sila, sumasama kami sa mga tours. Marami ding makikita doon.

Ben: Wow, okay pala sa Bohol.

Nellie: Oo nga. Sana makapunta din kayo doon. Sulit talaga!

*Ben: Nellie, you're back already? How was your vacation in Bohol?*

*Nellie: We really had fun! It turned out to be very nice there.*

*Ben: Really? When did you arrive?*

*Nellie: Last Monday.*

*Ben: How long was the trip?*

*Nellie: Only about an hour by plane.*

*Ben: What did you do there?*

*Nellie: A lot of things. The kids didn't want to leave. Three days were not enough, they said.*

*Ben: Where did you stay?*

*Nellie: At a resort, right in front of the beach.*

*Ben: Really? And how was the beach?*

*Nellie: Nice! The water was clear, very blue, and didn't have a lot of waves.*

*Ben: How about the weather? Because here in Manila it was raining.*

*Nellie: Not there. It would rain a little in the morning but it would stop. Then it would get sunny. It was hot, too, but of course it's cool right by the sea.*

*Ben: What else did you do?*

*Nellie: The kids wanted to be in the water all the time, so while they were swimming we would join some tours. There is a lot to see in Bohol.*

*Ben: Wow, it sounds like it's really nice there.*

*Nellie: That's right. I hope you get to go there, too.  
It's really worth it!*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue:



## 15C. VOCABULARY

ng husto	<i>very much</i>
noong Lunes	<i>last Monday</i>
Gaano katagal . . . ?	<i>How long . . . ? (duration)</i>
umuwi (root uwi)	<i>to go/come home</i>
tumira (root tira)	<i>to stay/live in a place</i>

maalon	<i>wavy</i>
malinaw	<i>clear</i>
tumitigil ( <i>root tigil</i> )	<i>stopping</i>
sumasama ( <i>root sama</i> )	<i>joining, going with</i>
habang	<i>while</i>
palagi	<i>always</i>
presko	<i>cool</i>
kaya	<i>that's why</i>
kasi	<i>because</i>

## 15D. KEY PHRASES

Filipinos use the following phrases to talk about their vacation experiences, including weather and some time expressions.

Kamusta ang bakasyon/biyahe?	<i>How's the vacation/trip?</i>
Ano'ng ginawa mo/ninyo?	<i>What did you do?</i>
Naligo ako/kami sa dagat.	<i>I/we bathed in the sea.</i>
Umakyat ako/kami sa bundok.	<i>I/we climbed the mountain.</i>
Gaano katagal ang biyahe?	<i>How long is/was the trip?</i>
Kamusta ang panahon?	<i>How is/was the weather?</i>
Maganda ang panahon.	<i>The weather is/was nice.</i>
Masama ang panahon.	<i>The weather is/was bad.</i>
Umuulan.	<i>It is/was raining.</i>
Mainit.	<i>It is/was hot.</i>
Malamig.	<i>It is/was cold.</i>
Mahangin.	<i>It is/was windy.</i>
May bagyo.	<i>There's a typhoon.</i>
Kailan kayo dumating?	<i>When did you arrive?</i>
Noong Lunes.	<i>Last Monday.</i>
Noong isang linggo.	<i>Last week.</i>
Noong isang buwan.	<i>Last month.</i>

Noong isang taon.	<i>Last year.</i>
Kanina.	<i>A little while ago.</i>
Kaninang umaga.	<i>This past morning.</i>
Kaninang tanghali.	<i>This past noon.</i>
Kaninang hapon.	<i>This past afternoon.</i>
Kahapon.	<i>Yesterday.</i>
Kagabi.	<i>Last night.</i>

## 15E. CULTURE NOTE 1

Philippine weather is tropical and has two distinct seasons: hot and dry from November to May and rainy from June to October. The climate in general is hot and humid, averaging at about 80 degrees Fahrenheit. The wet season also brings in monsoon rains and typhoons that develop over the Pacific Ocean and cross the archipelago as they move to the South China Sea. With their torrential rains and very strong winds, typhoons are a major natural disaster causing floods and landslides. The best time to visit is during the drier and relatively cooler months from November to March, before the start of the summer season when temperatures typically reach the 100 degree Fahrenheit mark.

## 15F. GRAMMAR

### Describing Weather and Natural Phenomena

Let's first list some nouns that refer to weather and natural phenomena:

araw	<i>sun</i>
init	<i>heat</i>
lamig	<i>cold</i>
ulan	<i>rain</i>
ulap	<i>cloud</i>
hangin	<i>wind</i>
ambon	<i>light rain, drizzle</i>
kidlat	<i>lightning</i>
kulog	<i>thunder</i>
bagyo	<i>typhoon</i>

baha	<i>flood</i>
lindol	<i>earthquake</i>
dilim	<i>darkness</i>
liwanag	<i>light</i>

Many of the above nouns can be changed into adjectives by adding the prefix *ma*:

mainit	<i>hot</i>
malamig	<i>cold</i>
maaraw	<i>sunny</i>
maulap	<i>cloudy</i>
mahangin	<i>windy</i>
madilim	<i>dark</i>
maliwanag	<i>light, bright</i>

These base words can also be turned into verbs using the *-um* affixation to express weather and other natural phenomena:

INFINITIVE	COMPLETED	CONTEMPLATED	INCOMPLETE
umulan	umulan	uulan	umuulan
uminit	uminit	iinit	umiinit
umaraw	umaraw	aaraw	umaaraw
lumamig	lumamig	lalamig	lumalamig

**Uminit ulit kahapon.**  
*It got hot again yesterday.*

**Lumalamig palagi sa gabi.**  
*It always gets cold at night.*

**Umaraw kahapon pero umuulan ngayon.**  
*It got sunny yesterday, but it's raining now.*

### Markers *Pala* and *Nga*

As we've seen so far, Tagalog uses many markers to affect the implications of a sentence. To add to your repertoire, let's now learn the uses of the particles *pala* and *nga*. As with other particles in Tagalog, they always appear after the first word in a sentence, unless the subject pronoun *ka* is used, in which case, the particles appear after *ka*.

*Pala* is a marker that expresses surprise or a realization (“It turns out that” or “I realize that”).

**Nagbakasyon pala sila.**

*So they went on vacation! (It turns out/I realize that they went on vacation.)*

*Nga* expresses agreement and affirmation, or adds emphasis, much like the English “indeed.”

**Dadalaw si Karen bukas. —Oo nga.**

*Karen is coming to visit. —Yeah, that's right.*

**Gusto nga niyang lumangoy.**

*He/she did want to swim.*

**Uulan nga bukas.**

*It is going to rain tomorrow (I'm telling you).*

## **Markers *Daw* and *Naman***

Two more markers used frequently in Tagalog are *daw* and *naman*.

*Daw* (or *raw* after words ending in a vowel) is used in reported speech as an equivalent to the English “that.”

**Dumating daw sila kahapon.**

*It's said that they came yesterday.*

*Naman* is roughly equivalent to “instead” or “on the contrary.” It expresses a contrast to or a shift from an implied or stated fact.

**Ikaw naman ang magpunta doon.**

*It's your turn to go there.*

**Mainit ba kahapon? —Hindi naman.**

*Was it hot yesterday? —(On the contrary,) not really.*

**Wala naman akong kotse.**

*I (on the other hand) do not have a car.*

## **Expressing Hope**

In Tagalog, the marker *sana* is used to express hope. It is typically placed at the beginning of a phrase, but may also be placed after the verb. Observe the following sentences:

**Sana umaraw bukas.**

*I hope it's sunny tomorrow.*

**Dumalaw sana kayo dito.**

*I hope you (pl.) visit here.*

**Sana magbakasyon tayo.**

*I wish that we would go on vacation.*

## **Narrating the Past**

In Tagalog, both the completed and the incomplete aspects are used to describe actions in the past. The completed aspect describes an action that was started and completed in the past, while the incomplete aspect can be used to describe both present and past actions. When used to describe a past action, the incomplete aspect can express a progressive past action or action that “was going on” in the past, as well as repeated or habitual past actions. Observe the following pairs of sentences:

**Umaaraw pagdating namin sa Bohol.**

*It was sunny when we got to Bohol.*

**Umaraw pagdating namin sa Bohol.**

*It got sunny when we got to Bohol.*

**Umulan kahapon.**

*It rained yesterday.*

**Umuulan kahapon.**

*It was raining yesterday.*

**Naligo kami sa dagat kahapon.**

*We bathed in the sea yesterday.*

**Naliligo kami sa dagat palagi.**

*We always bathe in the sea.*

To express two simultaneous past actions, the incomplete aspect is used with the conjunction *habang* (while):

**Natutulog sila **habang** nanonood kami ng TV.**

*They were sleeping while we were watching TV.*

**Habang kumakain kami, naglalaro ka.**

*While we were eating, you were playing.*

## **15G. READING**

Read the following text of a weather forecast and make note of some vocabulary words that you have learned from this lesson:

**Narito naman ang ulat ukol sa panahon . . .**

Ang kalakhang Maynila ay makakaranas ng bahaga hanggang sa maulap na kalangitan na may pag-ulang at pagkulog at pagkidlat. Sa dakong hilaga at gitnang Luzon ay makakaranas ng maulap na papawirin na may kalat-kalat na pag-ulang at pulu-pulong pagkulog

at pagkidlat. Samantalang ang natitirang bahagi ng bansa ay makakaranas ng maulap na papawirin na may pulu-pulong pag-ulang. Ang araw ay sumikat kaninang alas 5:45 ng umaga at lulubog mamayang alas 6:20 ng gabi.

*And now here's the weather report . . .*

*Metro Manila will experience slight to moderate cloudy skies mixed with rain, thunder, and lightning. Northern and Central Luzon will experience cloudy skies with scattered rain and isolated thunderstorms and lightning. The rest of the country will experience cloudy skies and isolated rainshowers. Sunrise was at 5:45 am and sunset will be at 6:20 in the evening.*

## **15H. CULTURE NOTE 2**

Called the “Pearl of the Orient Seas,” the Philippines owes much of its natural beauty to its unique geography. Part of the Pacific Ring of Fire, it is the world’s second largest archipelago, with a cluster of 7,107 islands, many of them extinct volcanoes and atolls. It has one of the largest coastlines in the world, totaling over 22,000 miles, as well as one of the richest biogeographic areas, with 150 million hectares of marine waters. The island groups of the Visayas and Palawan, with their pristine white-sand beaches and world-class diving sites, have many of the country’s main natural attractions: El Nido, Boracay, and Bohol, to name but a few. On the two largest islands, Luzon in the north and Mindanao in the south, the terrain is mostly mountainous and offers more natural wonders. Worth mentioning is the Cordillera, a vast mountain range occupying nearly half of northern Luzon and site of the famed 2,000-year-old rice terraces of Banaue, carved out of the mountains by the Ifugao tribe. In Mindanao there is Mt. Apo, the country’s highest peak, where the endangered Philippine eagle, the largest in the world, still survives in its lush rainforests. There are 21 active volcanoes, including Mt. Mayon in Albay province, which is the most active and considered the most perfect cone volcano, and the mysterious Taal Volcano, one of the world’s smallest, which rises from the crater lake of another extinct volcano.

To find out more about the Philippines as a travel destination, go to [www.tourism.gov.ph](http://www.tourism.gov.ph).

## EXERCISES

A. Choose a word from the list below to complete the dialogue. You may not need to use every word in the list.

*araw sana biyahe mainit ulan dagat bundok*

A: Dory, kamusta ang (1) ninyo sa Boracay?

B: Ay, ang saya! (2) sumama ka sa amin.

A: Oo nga, eh. Wala bang (3) doon?

B: Hindi, (4) nga, eh. Na-sunburn kami sa tindi (intensity) ng (5).

A: Talaga? Ano'ng ginawa ninyo?

B: Marami pero siyempre palagi kaming nasa (6) lumalangoy.

B. Fill in each blank with the markers *daw*, *pala*, *nga*, or *naman* according to the context given and write a possible translation of the sentence in English:

1. Huwag ka \_\_\_\_\_ lumabas, sabi ng Nanay.

\_\_\_\_\_.

2. Uulan yata bukas. —Oo, uulan \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_.

3. Doon may tao. Dito \_\_\_\_\_ wala.

\_\_\_\_\_.

4. Dumalaw ako sa kanila pero umalis \_\_\_\_\_ sila.

\_\_\_\_\_.

5. Ang init \_\_\_\_\_ dito!

\_\_\_\_\_.

C. Using the pairs of verb roots below, create sentences expressing two simultaneous actions using the incomplete aspect and the connector *habang* (while) or *noong* (when). Follow the model below:

*tulog* *nood*

*Natutulog sila habang nanonood kami ng TV.*

*kain*   *tulog*   *linis*   *pahinga*

*gawa*   *kinig*   *luto*   *tawag*

*laro*   *ulan*   *ligo*   *handa*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. b) beach    2. c) tatlong araw    3. a) sunny and hot    4. *Panahon* means "weather."    5. *Mainit* means "hot."

### Exercises

- A. 1. biyahe    2. sana    3. ulan    4. mainit    5. araw    6. dagat
- B. Some possible answers: 1. Huwag ka raw lumabas sabi ng Nanay. 2. Uulan yata bukas.—Oo, uulan nga. 3. Doon may tao. Dito naman wala. 4. Dumalaw ako sa kanila pero umalis pala sila. 5. Ang init naman/pala dito!
- C. Some possible answers: 1. Kumakain kami habang natutulog siya. 2. Gumagawa ako ng homework habang nakikinig ng radyo. 3. Naglalaro ang mga bata habang umuulan. 4. Naglilinis kami noong nagpapahinga sila. 5. Nagluluto ako noong tumatawag ka. 6. Naghahanda sila habang naliligo kami.

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: TAGALOG JOURNAL

For our final challenge, imagine that you are vacationing on an island location somewhere in the Philippines. You may want to look on the Internet for possible places and choose one that you would like to visit. Write a postcard to a friend and talk about your vacation. Describe what it is like, the weather there, and the things that you have done. Use as many of the vocabulary words you have learned over the course of these 15 lessons as you can, including food, family, and leisure time phrases. Use as many aspects, markers, and particles as you can, and if you run out of room, start a new postcard!

## *Common Verb Roots and Their Infinitives*

TAGALOG	ENGLISH	ACTOR FOCUS	THEME FOCUS
akyat	<i>climb</i>	umakyat	akyatin, akyatan
alam	<i>know</i>	—	alamin
alis	<i>leave</i>	umalis	alasin
aral	<i>study</i>	mag-aral	aralin
away	<i>fight</i>	mag-away	awayin
ayos	<i>tidy, fix</i>	umayos, mag-ayos	ayusin, ayusan
baba	<i>descend</i>	bumaba	babain, babaan
bagsak	<i>fall</i>	bumagsak, magbagsak	ibagsak, bagsakan
basa	<i>read</i>	bumasa, magbasa	basahin, basahan
bayad	<i>pay</i>	magbayad	ibayad, bayaran
bigay	<i>give</i>	magbigay	ibigay, bigyan
bili	<i>buy</i>	bumili	bilhin, ibili, bilhan
bili	<i>sell</i>	magbili	ipagbili
dala	<i>carry</i>	magdala	dalhin, dalhan
dalaw	<i>visit</i>	dumalaw	dalawin, idalaw
dating	<i>come, arrive</i>	dumating	—
galaw	<i>move</i>	gumalaw, magalaw	galawin, igalaw
gamit	<i>use</i>	gumamit	gamitin, gamitan
gamot	<i>cure, treat</i>	gumamot	gamutin
gawa	<i>make</i>	gumawa, maggawa	gawin, igawa, gawaan
gising	<i>wake up</i>	gumising	gisingin
hanap	<i>find, search</i>	maghanap, mahanap	hanapin

TAGALOG	ENGLISH	ACTOR FOCUS	THEME FOCUS
handa	<i>prepare</i>	humanda, maghanda	handaan
hawak	<i>hold, grip</i>	humawak	hawakan
hiram	<i>borrow</i>	humiram	hiramin, ihiram, hiraman
inom	<i>drink</i>	uminom	inumin, inuman
iwan	<i>leave</i>	maiwan	iwanan
kaibigan	<i>befriend</i>	kumaibigan	kaibiganin
kain	<i>eat</i>	kumain, magkain	kainin, ikain, kainan
kilala	<i>know</i>	kumilala	kilalanin
kinig	<i>listen, hear</i>	makinig	—
kita	<i>meet up</i>	magkita	kitain
kuha	<i>get</i>	kumuha	kunin, ikuha, kunan
laba	<i>laundry</i>	maglaba	labhan
labas	<i>go out</i>	lumabas	labasin, labasan, ilabas
lagay	<i>put</i>	lumagay, maglagay	ilagay, lagyan
lakad	<i>walk</i>	lumakad, maglakad	lakarin, ilakad, lakaran
laro	<i>play</i>	maglaro	laruin
luto	<i>cook</i>	magluto	iluto, lutuin
nood	<i>watch</i>	manood	—
pagod	<i>tire</i>	mapagod	pagurin
palit	<i>change, exchange</i>	magpalit	palitan
para	<i>stop, hail (transport)</i>	pumara, magpara	parahin, ipara, parahan
pasok	<i>enter</i>	pumasok	pasukin, ipasok, pasukan
pasyal	<i>stroll</i>	magpasyal	pasyalan, ipasyal
plantsa	<i>iron</i>	magplantsa	plantsahin
punta	<i>go</i>	pumunta, magpunta	puntahan
sabi	<i>tell, say</i>	magsabi	sabihin, sabihan

TAGALOG	ENGLISH	ACTOR FOCUS	THEME FOCUS
sagot	<i>answer</i>	sumagot	sagutin, isagot, sagutan
salita	<i>speak, talk</i>	magsalita	salitain
sama	<i>accompany, join</i>	sumama, magsama	isama, samahan
sanay	<i>practice</i>	magsanay	sanayin
sara	<i>close, shut</i>	—	isara, sarhan
sayaw	<i>dance</i>	sumayaw, magsayaw	sayawin, isayaw
simula	<i>start</i>	magsimula	simulan
sira	<i>damage</i>	masira	sirain, siraan
sulat	<i>write</i>	sumulat, magsulat	sulatin, isulat, sulatan
tahi	<i>sew</i>	tumahi, magtahi	tahiin, itahi
tanong	<i>ask</i>	magtanong	tanungin, itanong
tapos	<i>end, complete</i>	matapos	—
tapos	<i>finish</i>	magtapos	tapusin
tawag	<i>call</i>	magtawag	tawagin
tawag	<i>call on the phone</i>	tumawag	tawagan
tawid	<i>cross</i>	tumawid	tawirin
tigil	<i>stop</i>	tumigil	tigilan, tigilin, itigil
tingin	<i>look</i>	tumingin	tingnan
tira	<i>live, reside</i>	tumira	tirahan
tulog	<i>sleep</i>	matulog	itulog, tulugan
tulong	<i>help</i>	tumulong, magtulong	tulungan
turo	<i>teach</i>	magturo	ituro, turuan
ulan	<i>rain</i>	umulan	ulanin, ulanan
upo	<i>sit</i>	maupo	upuan
usap	<i>converse</i>	mag-usap	—
uwi	<i>go home</i>	umuwi	uwian
wala	<i>lose</i>	mawala	iwala

# Glossary

## *Tagalog-English*

### **A**

aba	<i>wow</i>
Abril	<i>April</i>
abukado	<i>avocado</i>
agad	<i>right away</i>
agham	<i>sciences</i>
Agosto	<i>August</i>
akin	<i>me, my (SA pronoun)</i>
aklatan	<i>library</i>
ako	<i>I (ANG pronoun)</i>
Ako ay si John.	<i>I'm John.</i>
akyat	<i>climb (v.)</i>
alahas	<i>jewelry</i>
alam	<i>know (a fact) (v.)</i>
Alam mo/ninyo kung . . . ?	<i>Do you know if . . . ?</i>
Alam mo . . . ?	<i>Do you know . . . ?</i>
alin	<i>which (question word)</i>
alis	<i>departure</i>
almusal	<i>breakfast</i>
ambon	<i>light rain</i>
amerikana	<i>suit</i>
amin	<i>us, our (excl., SA pronoun)</i>
anak	<i>child, offspring</i>

anim	<i>six</i>
anim na raan	<i>six hundred</i>
animnapu	<i>sixty</i>
ano	<i>what</i>
Ano (po) 'yun?	<i>What is it?</i>
Ano sa palagay mo?	<i>What is your opinion? What do you think?</i>
Ano'ng balak mong gawin?	<i>What do you plan to do?</i>
Ano'ng balita?	<i>What's new?</i>
Ano'ng ginagawa mo?	<i>What are you doing?</i>
Ano'ng ginawa mo/niyo?	<i>What did you do?</i>
Ano'ng masarap dito?	<i>What's good here?</i>
Ano'ng numero ninyo/nila?	<i>What's your number? (fml.)</i>
Ano'ng oras ka/kayo . . .	<i>What time do you . . .</i>
Ano'ng oras na?	<i>What time is it?</i>
Ano'ng pakiramdam mo?	<i>How do you feel?</i>
Ano'ng pangalan mo?	<i>What's your name? (infml.)</i>
Ano'ng pangalan ninyo/nila?	<i>What's your name? (fml.)</i>
Ano'ng presyo?	<i>What's the price?</i>
apat	<i>four</i>
apat na raan	<i>four hundred</i>
apatnapu	<i>forty</i>
aplaya	<i>beach</i>
apo	<i>grandchild</i>
araling panlipunan	<i>social studies</i>
araw	<i>sun, day</i>
Aray!	<i>Ouch!</i>
asawa	<i>spouse</i>
asin	<i>salt</i>
asukal	<i>sugar</i>
asul	<i>blue</i>
at	<i>and</i>

ate	<i>older sister; also used as a title to address elder sisters</i>
atin	<i>us, our (incl., SA pronoun)</i>
away	<i>fight (n.)</i>
ayan	<i>there (demonstrative)</i>
Ayaw ko . . .	<i>I don't like/want . . .</i>
ayos	<i>order, tidiness</i>

## B

baba	<i>descend (v.), go down (v.)</i>
babae	<i>woman</i>
baboy	<i>pig</i>
bago	<i>new</i>
Bago ka dito?	<i>Are you new here?</i>
bagoong	<i>shrimp paste</i>
bagsak	<i>fall (n.)</i>
bagyo	<i>typhoon</i>
baha	<i>flood (n.)</i>
bahay	<i>house</i>
baka	<i>maybe, perhaps, might; cow, beef</i>
Baka gusto mong . . .	<i>You may want to . . .</i>
bakasyon	<i>vacation</i>
bakit	<i>why (question word)</i>
balak	<i>plan</i>
balat	<i>skin, leather</i>
bali	<i>bend, break</i>
balik	<i>return</i>
Balik ka/kayo.	<i>Come back.</i>
balikat	<i>shoulder</i>
balita	<i>news</i>
bangkero	<i>banker</i>
bangko	<i>bank</i>

banyo	<i>bathroom</i>
barong tagalog	<i>traditional Filipino shirt</i>
bata	<i>child (n.), young (adj.)</i>
batok	<i>neck</i>
bawang	<i>garlic</i>
bayad	<i>payment</i>
bayan	<i>country</i>
berde	<i>green</i>
bestida	<i>dress</i>
beynte	<i>twenty</i>
beyntidos	<i>twenty-two</i>
beyntitres	<i>twenty-three</i>
beyntiuno	<i>twenty-one</i>
bibig	<i>mouth</i>
bigay	<i>gift, giving</i>
bigyan (root bigay)	<i>give (v.)</i>
Bigyan mo ako ng. . . .	<i>Give me a/an/some. . . .</i>
bihon	<i>rice noodle</i>
bilhin	<i>buy (v.)</i>
binata	<i>single male, bachelor</i>
binti	<i>leg</i>
biyahe	<i>trip</i>
Biyernes	<i>Friday</i>
blusa	<i>blouse</i>
bobo	<i>stupid</i>
braso	<i>arm</i>
buhay	<i>alive (adj.); life (n.)</i>
Buhay pa.	<i>Still alive.</i>
bukas	<i>tomorrow</i>
bulalo	<i>soup (a kind of)</i>
bulkan	<i>volcano</i>

bumagsak ( <i>root bagsak</i> )	<i>fell (v.)</i>
bumili	<i>buy (v.)</i>
bundok	<i>mountain</i>
bunso	<i>youngest child, youngest sibling</i>
burol	<i>hill</i>
bus	<i>bus</i>
busog	<i>full (adj.), satisfied (adj., relating to food)</i>
Busog pa ako.	<i>I'm still full.</i>
buwan	<i>month, moon</i>

## C

chit	<i>check, bill</i>
------	--------------------

## D

daan	<i>street</i>
dagat	<i>sea, ocean</i>
dahil	<i>because</i>
dala	<i>carried (adj.), brought (adj.)</i>
dalaga	<i>single female, bachelorette</i>
Dalaga pa siya?	<i>Is she still single?</i>
dalaw	<i>visit</i>
Dalaw ka/kayo ult.	<i>Come visit again.</i>
dalawa	<i>two</i>
dalawampu	<i>twenty</i>
dalawampu't dalawa	<i>twenty-two</i>
dalawampu't isa	<i>twenty-one</i>
dalawampu't tatlo	<i>twenty-three</i>
dalawang libo't sampa	<i>two thousand ten</i>
dalhan ( <i>root dala</i> )	<i>bring (v., command form)</i>
Dalhan mo ako ng . . .	<i>Bring me some . . .</i>
daliri	<i>finger</i>

damit	<i>clothes</i>
dapat	<i>must, should</i>
darating (root dating)	<i>will come (v.), will arrive (v.)</i>
Darating siya alas . . .	<i>He/She will be coming/arriving at . . .</i>
dati	<i>former, formerly</i>
dating	<i>arrival</i>
dayap	<i>lime</i>
dentista	<i>dentist</i>
depende	<i>it depends</i>
deretso	<i>straight</i>
dibdib	<i>chest</i>
dilaw	<i>yellow</i>
dilim	<i>darkness</i>
din	<i>also, too</i>
Disyembre	<i>December</i>
dito	<i>here</i>
Dito na lang tayo sa bahay.	<i>Let's just stay home.</i>
diyan	<i>there</i>
Diyan ka na.	<i>equivalent to "I'll leave you now."</i>
Diyan lang.	<i>Just around here. (lit., only there)</i>
diyes	<i>ten</i>
diyesinuwebe	<i>nineteen</i>
diyesiotso	<i>eighteen</i>
diyesisais	<i>sixteen</i>
diyesisiyete	<i>seventeen</i>
doktor	<i>doctor</i>
dolyar	<i>dollar</i>
doon	<i>over there</i>
dos	<i>two</i>
dos mil diyes	<i>two thousand ten</i>
dose	<i>twelve</i>

dumarating	<i>arriving (v.)</i>
dumating	<i>come (v.), arrive (v.)</i>
dyus	<i>juice</i>

## **E**

ehersisyos	<i>exercise</i>
eksray	<i>x-ray (n.)</i>
Enero	<i>January</i>
eroplano	<i>airplane</i>
escabecheng lapu-lapu	<i>pickled fried grouper fish</i>
eskuwela	<i>school</i>
estudyante	<i>student</i>

## **G**

gaano	<i>how (question word, qualitative and quantitative)</i>
gaano kalapit	<i>how near</i>
gaano kalayo	<i>how far</i>
gaano katagal	<i>how long (duration)</i>
gabi	<i>evening</i>
gagamutin ( <i>root gamot</i> )	<i>will treat (v.), will cure (v.)</i>
galaw	<i>movement</i>
galing	<i>come (from)</i>
gamit	<i>use (n.); used (adj.)</i>
gamitin ( <i>root gamit</i> )	<i>use (v.)</i>
gamot	<i>cure, medicine</i>
ganda	<i>beauty</i>
gasolinahan	<i>gasoline station</i>
gata	<i>coconut milk</i>
gatas	<i>milk</i>
gawa	<i>action, deed</i>
Ginang	<i>Mrs.</i>

gising	<i>waking up (n.)</i>
gubat	<i>forest</i>
gulay	<i>vegetable</i>
gumagamit ( <i>root</i> gamit)	<i>is using, uses (v.)</i>
gumalaw ( <i>root</i> galaw)	<i>move (v.)</i>
gumawa ( <i>root</i> gawa)	<i>made (v.)</i>
gumising ( <i>root</i> gising)	<i>woke up (v.)</i>
gupit	<i>haircut</i>
guro	<i>teacher</i>
gusto	<i>like (modal)</i>
Gusto ko ng . . .	<i>I would like/want . . .</i>
Gusto ko . . .	<i>I like/want . . .</i>
Gusto kong . . .	<i>I want to . . .</i>
Gusto mo/ninyo ng . . . ?	<i>Do you like, want . . . ? (infml./fml.)</i>
Gusto mong maglaro ng . . . ?	<i>Do you want to play . . . ?</i>
Gusto mong makilala si . . . ?	<i>Do you want to meet . . . ?</i>
Gusto mong makinig ng . . . ?	<i>Do you want to listen to . . . ?</i>
gutom	<i>hunger</i>
guwapo	<i>handsome</i>

## H

habang	<i>while</i>
Halika.	<i>Let's go.</i>
halos	<i>almost</i>
hanap	<i>search (n.)</i>
handa	<i>prepared food (n.); alert, ready (adj.)</i>
hangin	<i>wind</i>
hapon	<i>afternoon</i>
hapunan	<i>dinner (n.)</i>
hardin	<i>garden</i>

hating-gabi	<i>midnight</i>
hawak	<i>hold (n.)</i>
hawakan ( <i>root</i> hawak)	<i>hold (v.)</i>
hilaga	<i>north</i>
hilamos	<i>washing one's face</i>
hilaw	<i>unripe</i>
hinahanap ( <i>root</i> hanap)	<i>looking for, finding</i>
Hinahanap ko ang . . .	<i>I'm looking for . . .</i>
hindi	<i>no</i>
Hindi ako marunong.	<i>I don't know (how to do something).</i>
Hindi ko alam.	<i>I don't know (a fact).</i>
Hindi ko gusto 'yan.	<i>I don't like that.</i>
hiram	<i>borrowed (adj.)</i>
ho	<i>word added to phrases to express respect</i>
hoy	<i>hey</i>
huli	<i>last, late (referring to people and things)</i>
Huli ako.	<i>I'm late.</i>
Hulyo	<i>July</i>
humanda ( <i>root</i> handa)	<i>prepared (v.)</i>
humapunan	<i>have dinner (v.)</i>
humiram ( <i>root</i> hiram)	<i>borrow (v.), rent (v.)</i>
Hunyo	<i>June</i>
huwag	<i>don't (negative word in a command)</i>
Huwebes	<i>Thursday</i>

## I

i-eksray	<i>x-ray (v.)</i>
ikaw	<i>you (ANG pronoun)</i>

ilan	<i>how many (question word)</i>
Ilan ang may-asawa?	<i>How many are married?</i>
Ilan kayo sa pamilya?	<i>How many are you in the family?</i>
ilang taon	<i>how old (question word)</i>
ilog	<i>river</i>
ilong	<i>nose</i>
impeksyon	<i>infection</i>
importante	<i>important</i>
Ingat ka.	<i>Take care.</i>
init	<i>heat</i>
inom	<i>drinking (n.)</i>
inumin	<i>drink (n.)</i>
inyo	<i>you, your (pl., SA pronoun)</i>
isa	<i>one</i>
isang daan	<i>one hundred</i>
isang daan at dalawa	<i>one hundred and two</i>
isang daan at dalawampu't lima	<i>one hundred and twenty-five</i>
isang daan at isa	<i>one hundred and one</i>
isang daan at tatlo	<i>one hundred and three</i>
isang libo, isanlibo	<i>one thousand</i>
isang libo't isa	<i>one thousand and one</i>
isang milyon	<i>one million</i>
isara	<i>close, shut (command form)</i>
isda	<i>fish</i>
itim	<i>black</i>
itlog	<i>egg</i>
ito	<i>this (ANG pronoun), here</i>
iwan	<i>leave (v.)</i>
iyan	<i>that (ANG pronoun)</i>
iyo	<i>you, your (sing., SA pronoun)</i>
iyon	<i>that over there (ANG pronoun)</i>

**K**

ka	<i>you (ANG pronoun)</i>
kaaalis	<i>has/have just left (v.)</i>
kagabi	<i>last night</i>
kagigising	<i>has/have just woken up (v.)</i>
kahapon	<i>yesterday</i>
kahit	<i>although</i>
kaibigan	<i>friend (n.)</i>
kailan	<i>when (question word)</i>
Kailan kayo dumating?	<i>When did you arrive?</i>
kailangan	<i>need</i>
Kailangan ko ang tulong mo/ninyo.	<i>I need your help.</i>
Kailangan ko . . .	<i>I need . . .</i>
kain	<i>eat (command form)</i>
kaka-	<i>a prefix denoting the action stated in the verb is tediously performed again and again or is continued for a long duration of time</i>
kalalagay	<i>has/have just put (v.)</i>
kalalaro	<i>has/have just played (v.)</i>
kaliwa	<i>left</i>
kaluluto	<i>has/have just cooked (v.)</i>
kalusugan	<i>health</i>
kalye	<i>street</i>
kama	<i>bed</i>
kamag-anak	<i>relative</i>
kamakalawa	<i>day before yesterday</i>
kamay	<i>hand</i>
kami	<i>we (excl., ANG pronoun)</i>
Kamusta ang bakasyon/biyahe?	<i>How's the vacation/trip?</i>
Kamusta ang panahon?	<i>How was/is the weather?</i>

Kamusta ang unang araw/ lingo/buwan mo?	<i>How's your first day/week/month? month?</i>
Kamusta ka?	<i>How are you? (singular, infml.)</i>
Kamusta kayo/sila?	<i>How are you? (fml.)</i>
kanan	<i>right</i>
kanila	<i>them, their (SA pronoun)</i>
kanin	<i>rice</i>
kanina	<i>earlier today, a little while ago</i>
Kaninang hapon.	<i>This past afternoon.</i>
Kaninang tanghali.	<i>This past noon.</i>
Kaninang umaga.	<i>This past morning.</i>
kaniya	<i>him, his, her (SA pronoun)</i>
kanluran	<i>west</i>
kanto	<i>corner</i>
kaopisina	<i>office mate</i>
kapatid	<i>sibling</i>
cape	<i>coffee</i>
kapupunta	<i>has/have just gone (v.)</i>
karne	<i>meat</i>
karot	<i>carrot</i>
kasal	<i>wedding</i>
kasama	<i>with, included</i>
kasangkapan sa bahay	<i>housewares</i>
kasangkapan sa kusina	<i>kitchenware</i>
kasaysayan	<i>history</i>
kasi	<i>because</i>
kasisimula (root simula)	<i>has/have just started (v.)</i>
katorse	<i>fourteen</i>
kaunti	<i>a little, few</i>
kaya	<i>that's why, perhaps</i>
kayo	<i>you (fml. sing., familiar/fml. pl., ANG pronoun)</i>

kidlat	<i>lightning</i>
kilala	<i>known (adj.), familiar (adj.), acquaintance (n.)</i>
Kilala mo si . . . ?	<i>Do you know . . . ?</i>
Kinagagalak kitang makilala.	<i>Glad to meet you. (infml.)</i>
Kinagagalak ko kayong/silang makilala.	<i>Glad to meet you. (fml.)</i>
kinig	<i>listen</i>
kinse	<i>fifteen</i>
kita	<i>seen (adj.)</i>
klase	<i>class</i>
ko	<i>my, me (NG pronoun)</i>
kolehiyo	<i>college</i>
komedor	<i>dining room</i>
korbata	<i>tie</i>
kulang	<i>incomplete, not enough, lacking</i>
kulay	<i>color</i>
kulog	<i>thunder</i>
Kumain ka muna.	<i>Eat first.</i>
Kumain ka na?	<i>Have you eaten?</i>
Kumain na ako.	<i>I've already eaten.</i>
kumpleto	<i>complete</i>
Kung magpasyal kaya tayo sa park?	<i>What if we take a stroll in the park?</i>
kung puwede	<i>if it can be, if possible</i>
kusina	<i>kitchen</i>
kuwarenta	<i>forty</i>
kuwarto	<i>bedroom</i>
kuwatro	<i>four</i>
kuwatro siyentos	<i>four hundred</i>
kuya	<i>older brother; also used as a title to address elder brothers</i>

**L**

labada	<i>laundry</i>
laban	<i>fight (n.)</i>
labing-anim	<i>sixteen</i>
labing-apat	<i>fourteen</i>
labing-dalawa	<i>twelve</i>
labing-isa	<i>eleven</i>
labing-lima	<i>fifteen</i>
labing-pito	<i>seventeen</i>
labing-siyam	<i>nineteen</i>
labing-tatlo	<i>thirteen</i>
labing-walo	<i>eighteen</i>
lagay	<i>situation, status</i>
lagi	<i>always</i>
lagnat	<i>fever</i>
lahat	<i>all</i>
lakad	<i>walk (n.)</i>
lalaki	<i>man</i>
lambot	<i>soft</i>
lamesa	<i>table</i>
lamig	<i>cold (n.)</i>
lang	<i>only, just</i>
laro	<i>game (n.), sport (n.)</i>
laruan	<i>toys</i>
lawa	<i>lake</i>
lechon	<i>roast pig</i>
leeg	<i>neck</i>
libangan	<i>diversion, leisure</i>
libro	<i>book</i>
likod	<i>back</i>
lima	<i>five</i>

limampu	<i>fifty</i>
linaw	<i>clear</i>
lindol	<i>earthquake</i>
Lingga	<i>Sunday</i>
linggo	<i>week</i>
litson	<i>roast pig</i>
liwanag	<i>light (n.)</i>
lola	<i>grandmother</i>
lolo	<i>grandfather</i>
luma (thing)	<i>old</i>
lumabas	<i>go out</i>
lumakad (root lakad)	<i>walk (v.)</i>
lumamig	<i>get cold (v.)</i>
Lumiko ka/kayo ...	<i>Turn ...</i>
Lunes	<i>Monday</i>
lungsod	<i>city</i>
luto	<i>cooking, cuisine</i>

## **M**

maaga	<i>early</i>
maalat	<i>salty</i>
maalon	<i>wavy</i>
maanghang	<i>spicy</i>
maaraw	<i>sunny</i>
maayos	<i>neat</i>
mababang paaralan	<i>elementary school</i>
mabagal	<i>slow</i>
mabait	<i>good, fine, kind</i>
mabilis	<i>fast</i>
mabuti	<i>good, fine, kind</i>
mabuting kalusugan	<i>good health</i>

madali	<i>easy</i>
madilim	<i>dark (adj.)</i>
magahol sa oras	<i>not have enough time</i>
magalaw	<i>mobile (adj.)</i>
mag-almusal	<i>eat breakfast (v.)</i>
maganda	<i>beautiful, nice</i>
Maganda ang panahon.	<i>The weather is/was nice.</i>
Magandang gabi!	<i>Good evening!</i>
Magandang hapon!	<i>Good afternoon!</i>
Magandang tanghali!	<i>Good noon!</i>
Magandang umaga!	<i>Good morning!</i>
mag-aryl	<i>study (v.)</i>
mag-ayos	<i>fix, get oneself ready (v.)</i>
magbabayad ( <i>root bayad</i> )	<i>will pay (v.)</i>
magbasa	<i>read (v.)</i>
magbili	<i>sell (v.)</i>
maghanda	<i>prepare (v.)</i>
maghapunan	<i>eat dinner (v.)</i>
maghilamos	<i>wash one's face (v.)</i>
maghintay ka	<i>wait (v.)</i>
maghulog ng sulat	<i>mail a letter (v.)</i>
magikot-ikot	<i>walk around (v.)</i>
mag-iwan ( <i>root iwan</i> )	<i>leave (something or someone) (v.)</i>
magkaimpeksyon	<i>get an infection (v.)</i>
magkano	<i>how much (question word)</i>
Magkano ito?	<i>How much is this?</i>
magkasing-	<i>equally (prefix)</i>
magkita ( <i>root kita</i> )	<i>see each other (v.), meet (v.)</i>
maglaba	<i>wash (clothes) (v.)</i>
maglakad	<i>walk (v.)</i>
maglibang	<i>have a diversion (v.), indulge in something leisurely (v.)</i>

magluto	<i>cook (v.)</i>
magpaayos	<i>have something fixed (v.)</i>
magpagawa ng . . .	<i>have . . . made/repaired (v.)</i>
magpagising	<i>have someone to wake someone up (v.)</i>
magpagupit ( <i>root</i> gupit)	<i>get a haircut (v.)</i>
magpahinga	<i>rest (v.)</i>
magpaiyak	<i>make someone cry (v.)</i>
magpakain	<i>cause someone to be fed (v.), to feed (v.)</i>
magpakasal	<i>get married (v.)</i>
magpakuha ng retrato	<i>have a photo taken (v.)</i>
magpalaba	<i>have laundry washed (v.)</i>
magpalamig ( <i>root</i> lamig)	<i>cool off (v.)</i>
magpalungkot	<i>make someone or something sad (v.)</i>
magpaluto	<i>have something cooked (v.)</i>
magpamasahé	<i>get a massage (v.)</i>
magpapalit ( <i>root</i> palit)	<i>change (v.), exchange (v.)</i>
magpapalit ng pera	<i>exchange money (v.)</i>
magpaplantsa	<i>have clothes ironed (v.)</i>
magpasaya	<i>make someone or something happy (v.)</i>
magpasyal ( <i>root</i> pasyal)	<i>take a stroll (v.)</i>
magpatahi ( <i>root</i> tahi)	<i>have an article of clothing sewn (v.), have an article of clothing tailored (v.)</i>
magpatawag ( <i>root</i> tawag)	<i>have someone call (v.)</i>
magpaturo	<i>have someone to teach someone (v.)</i>
magplantsa	<i>iron (v.)</i>
magsalita	<i>speak (v.), talk (v.)</i>
magsepilyo	<i>brush one's teeth (v.)</i>
magsimba ( <i>root</i> simba)	<i>go to church (v.)</i>
magsulat	<i>write (v.)</i>
magtanong ( <i>root</i> tanong)	<i>ask a question (v.)</i>
magturo	<i>teach (v.)</i>

magulang	<i>parent</i>
mahal	<i>expensive</i>
mahangin	<i>windy</i>
mahilig	<i>fond of</i>
mahina	<i>weak</i>
mahirap	<i>hard, difficult, poor</i>
mainit na sabaw	<i>hot soup</i>
maingay	<i>noisy, loud</i>
mainit	<i>hot</i>
maitim	<i>dark-skinned</i>
makalat	<i>messy</i>
makausap ( <i>root usap</i> )	<i>be able to speak to (v.)</i>
makilala ( <i>root kilala</i> )	<i>meet (v.), get to know (v.)</i>
makinig	<i>listen (v.)</i>
makipag-away	<i>fight with (v.)</i>
makipagkaibigan	<i>make friends with (v.)</i>
makipagkilala	<i>make an acquaintance with (v.)</i>
makipaglaban	<i>fight with (v.)</i>
makipaglaro	<i>play with (v.)</i>
makipagmeeting	<i>meet with (v.)</i>
makipagsayaw	<i>dance with (v.)</i>
makipagtalo	<i>argue with (v.)</i>
makipag-ugnay	<i>connect with (v.)</i>
malakas	<i>strong</i>
malaki	<i>big</i>
malamang	<i>most likely</i>
malamig	<i>cold (adj.)</i>
malapit	<i>near</i>
malasa	<i>flavorful</i>
malayo	<i>far</i>
maleta	<i>luggage</i>

maliit	<i>short, small</i>
malinis	<i>clean</i>
maliwanag	<i>light (adj.)</i>
malutong	<i>crunchy</i>
mamaya	<i>later</i>
mamayang gabi	<i>later tonight</i>
mananghalian ( <i>root tanghalian</i> )	<i>have lunch (v.)</i>
mangangalakal	<i>businessperson</i>
mangga	<i>mango</i>
manggagawa	<i>worker</i>
mani	<i>peanut</i>
manok	<i>chicken</i>
manonood ( <i>root nood</i> )	<i>will watch</i>
manood	<i>watch (v.)</i>
maputi	<i>light-skinned</i>
marami	<i>many</i>
Marso	<i>March</i>
Martes	<i>Tuesday</i>
marumi	<i>dirty</i>
marunong	<i>know how to (v.), be able to (v.)</i>
mas	<i>more (used in comparisons)</i>
Mas gusto ko ito.	<i>I like this one more.</i>
masakit	<i>painful, sore, hurt</i>
Masakit ang . . . ko.	<i>My . . . hurts.</i>
masama	<i>bad</i>
masama ang kalusugan	<i>in bad health</i>
Masama ang panahon.	<i>The weather is/was bad.</i>
masarap	<i>delicious</i>
masyado	<i>too</i>
mata	<i>eye</i>
mataas na paaralan	<i>high school</i>

mataba	<i>fat</i>
matabang	<i>bland</i>
matagal	<i>a long while</i>
Matagal ka na dito?	<i>Have you been here long?</i>
matagal na	<i>it's been a while since</i>
matalino	<i>smart</i>
matamis	<i>sweet</i>
matanda	<i>old (adj. to describe a person)</i>
matangkad	<i>tall</i>
matematika	<i>mathematics</i>
matulog	<i>sleep (v.)</i>
matutulog (root tulog)	<i>will sleep</i>
maulap	<i>cloudy</i>
may	<i>have (v.), there is, there are</i>
May . . . ako	<i>I have . . .</i>
mayaman	<i>rich</i>
Mayo	<i>May</i>
mayroon	<i>have (v.), there is, there are</i>
Mayroon kayong . . . ?	<i>Do you have . . . ?</i>
Mayroon/wala ba ditong . . .	<i>Is there a . . . /Is there no . . . around here</i>
medyas	<i>socks</i>
medyo	<i>a bit</i>
meeting	<i>meeting (n.)</i>
mesa	<i>table (n.)</i>
mga	<i>plural marker</i>
mil	<i>one thousand</i>
mil uno	<i>one thousand and one</i>
minuto	<i>minute (n.)</i>
Miyerkoles	<i>Wednesday</i>
mo	<i>your, you (singular, NG pronoun)</i>
mukha	<i>face (n.)</i>

mura	<i>cheap</i>
muwebles	<i>furniture</i>
<b>N</b>	
na	<i>now, already</i>
na naman	<i>again</i>
na pangbabae	<i>women's</i>
na panglalaki	<i>men's</i>
nadaganan ( <i>root</i> dagan)	<i>have something fall on oneself (v.)</i>
nag-aalmusal	<i>having breakfast</i>
Nag-aaral	<i>studying</i>
nag-aayos	<i>preparing oneself, getting ready</i>
naghahanda	<i>preparing</i>
naghihilamos	<i>washing (one's) face</i>
naglalaro ( <i>root</i> laro)	<i>are/were playing</i>
nagsesepilyo	<i>brushing (one's) teeth</i>
Nagustuhan ko . . .	<i>I liked . . .</i>
Nagustuhan namin . . .	<i>We liked . . .</i>
Nakakahiya naman.	<i>It's rather embarrassing.</i>
Nakakaraos naman.	<i>Surviving.</i>
nakatira	<i>living, a resident of</i>
nakausap	<i>was able to speak to</i>
nakaw	<i>steal (v.)</i>
nakikinig ( <i>root</i> kinig)	<i>listens, is listening</i>
namin	<i>our, us (excl. NG pronoun)</i>
nanay	<i>mother</i>
nandiyan	<i>is there, are there</i>
Nandiyan ba si . . . ?	<i>Is . . . there?</i>
nangangapa ( <i>root</i> kapa)	<i>feeling one's way around, groping</i>
nangyari ( <i>root</i> yari)	<i>happened</i>
napaaway ( <i>root</i> away)	<i>got into a fight</i>
napagod ( <i>root</i> pagod)	<i>got tired</i>

napilayan ( <i>root pilay</i> )	<i>have something sprained</i> (v.)
naranghita	<i>orange</i>
nars	<i>nurse</i>
nasa	<i>preposition that indicates location (at/in/on)</i>
Nasa kanto ng . . .	<i>It's on the corner of . . .</i>
nasa Maynila	<i>in Manila</i>
nasaan	<i>where (question word to ask location)</i>
Nasaan ang mga . . . ?	<i>Where are the . . . ?</i>
Nasaan ang . . . ?	<i>Where is . . . ?</i>
nasanay ( <i>root sanay</i> )	<i>got accustomed to (v.), got used to (v.)</i>
nasira ( <i>root sira</i> )	<i>broke</i>
natin	<i>our, us (incl. NG pronoun)</i>
nawawala	<i>lost (adj.)</i>
Nawawala ako.	<i>I'm lost.</i>
negosyante	<i>businessperson</i>
ng gabi	<i>in the evening, p.m.</i>
ng hapon	<i>in the afternoon, p.m.</i>
ng hating-gabi	<i>midnight</i>
ng husto	<i>very much</i>
ng tanghali	<i>noon</i>
ng umaga	<i>in the morning, a.m.</i>
nga pala	<i>by the way</i>
ngayon	<i>today, now</i>
ngayon din	<i>right now, right this moment</i>
ngayong gabi	<i>this evening</i>
ngayong hapon	<i>this afternoon</i>
ngayong tanghali	<i>this noon</i>
ngayong umaga	<i>this morning</i>
ngipin	<i>tooth</i>
nila	<i>their, them (NG pronoun)</i>

ninong	<i>godfather</i>
ninyo	<i>your, you (pl./sing. fml. NG pronoun)</i>
nito	<i>this (NG pronoun)</i>
niya	<i>his, him, her (NG pronoun)</i>
niyan	<i>that (NG pronoun)</i>
niyon	<i>that over there (NG pronoun)</i>
nobenta	<i>ninety</i>
Nobyembre	<i>November</i>
noo	<i>forehead</i>
nood	<i>view (v.), watch (v.)</i>
noong isang buwan	<i>last month</i>
noong isang linggo	<i>last week</i>
noong isang taon	<i>last year</i>
numero	<i>number</i>
nuwebe	<i>nine</i>
nuwebe siyentos	<i>nine hundred</i>

## 0

obertaym	<i>overtime</i>
oho	<i>yes (fml.)</i>
Oktubre	<i>October</i>
onse	<i>eleven</i>
oo	<i>yes (infml.)</i>
opo	<i>yes (fml.)</i>
oras	<i>time, hours</i>
otsenta	<i>eighty</i>
otso	<i>eight</i>

## P

pa	<i>still, yet</i>
paa	<i>feet</i>
Paalam!	<i>Good-bye! (fml.)</i>

Paano?	<i>How? (manner or means)</i>
paaralan	<i>school</i>
pag-aaral	<i>studies</i>
pagbasa	<i>reading</i>
pagdating (ang)	<i>coming, arrival (n.)</i>
pag-inom (ang)	<i>drinking (n.)</i>
pagkatapos	<i>afterwards</i>
paglipat	<i>move (n.)</i>
pagod	<i>tiredness (n.); tired (adj.)</i>
pagpunta (ang)	<i>going (n.), coming (n.)</i>
pagsabi (ang)	<i>telling (n.)</i>
pagsulat	<i>writing</i>
pagupitan	<i>hair salon</i>
Pakikuha ng . . .	<i>Get me a/an/some . . .</i>
pakiramdam	<i>feeling</i>
pakisabi (root sabi)	<i>please tell</i>
pakitanong (root tanong)	<i>please ask</i>
Pakitanong kung . . .	<i>Please ask if . . .</i>
Pakitanong kung alin . . .	<i>Please ask which . . .</i>
Pakitanong kung ano . . .	<i>Please ask what . . .</i>
Pakitanong kung kailan . . .	<i>Please ask when . . .</i>
Pakitanong kung saan . . .	<i>Please ask where . . .</i>
palagi	<i>always</i>
palda	<i>skirt</i>
palit	<i>exchange</i>
palitan	<i>exchange rate</i>
pamangkin	<i>nephew, niece</i>
pamantasan	<i>university</i>
pamilya	<i>family</i>
paminta	<i>pepper</i>
panahon	<i>weather, season, time</i>

pangalawa	<i>second</i>
panganay	<i>first-born</i>
panganim	<i>sixth</i>
pangapat	<i>fourth</i>
pangatlo	<i>third</i>
pangdekorasyon	<i>decorative</i>
panghimagas	<i>dessert</i>
pang-ibaba	<i>bottoms</i>
pang-ilan	<i>what place, question word used to ask place in a sequence</i>
Pang-ilan ka/kayo?	<i>Where is your place in the family (the order)?</i>
pangit	<i>ugly</i>
pang-itaas	<i>tops</i>
panglima	<i>fifth</i>
pangpito	<i>seventh</i>
pangsampu	<i>tenth</i>
pangsiyam	<i>ninth</i>
pangwalo	<i>eighth</i>
panood (ang)	<i>viewing (n.), watching (n.)</i>
pantalon	<i>pants</i>
para	<i>for, in order to</i>
Para saan?	<i>What for?</i>
pasalubong	<i>gift</i>
pasok	<i>school (n.), work (n.); go in (v.)</i>
Pasyensiya ka na./Pasyensiya na kayo.	<i>My apologies.</i>
payat	<i>thin</i>
Pebrero	<i>February</i>
pera	<i>money</i>
pero	<i>but</i>
pilay	<i>sprain (n.)</i>

pinaka-	<i>most (prefix)</i>
pinya	<i>pineapple</i>
pito	<i>seven</i>
pitumpu	<i>seventy</i>
plantsa	<i>iron (n.)</i>
po	<i>word added to phrases to express respect</i>
presko	<i>cool</i>
propesor	<i>professor</i>
pula	<i>red</i>
pulmonya	<i>pneumonia</i>
pulo	<i>island</i>
pumalit ( <i>root</i> palit)	<i>replaced (v.)</i>
pumara ( <i>root</i> para)	<i>stop (v.), hail (v.) (transportation)</i>
punta	<i>destination</i>
pupunta	<i>will go</i>
puri	<i>praise (n.)</i>
puti	<i>white</i>
Puwedeng . . . ?	<i>Can I . . .</i>
Puwedeng gumamit ng credit card?	<i>Can I use a credit card?</i>
Puwedeng magtanong?	<i>Can (I) ask a question?</i>
Puwedeng makausap si . . . ?	<i>Can I talk to . . . ?</i>

## R

regalo	<i>gift</i>
relo	<i>watch</i>
rin	<i>also, too (spelling variation of din)</i>
rito	<i>here (spelling variation of dito)</i>

## S

sa akin	<i>to me, mine</i>
sa amin	<i>to us, ours (excl.)</i>

sa atin	<i>ours (incl.)</i>
sa gabi	<i>in the evening</i>
sa hapon	<i>in the afternoon</i>
sa inyo	<i>yours (pl.)</i>
sa isang linggo	<i>next week</i>
sa iyo ('yo)	<i>yours (sing.)</i>
sa kaliwa	<i>to the left</i>
sa kanan	<i>to the right</i>
sa kanila	<i>theirs</i>
sa kaniya	<i>his, hers</i>
sa tabi	<i>next to</i>
sa tanghali	<i>at noon</i>
sa tapat	<i>in front of, across from</i>
sa umaga	<i>in the morning</i>
sa wakas	<i>at last</i>
saan	<i>where</i>
Saan ka galing?	<i>Where have you been? (Where are you coming from?)</i>
Saan ka pupunta?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
Sabado	<i>Saturday</i>
sabi	<i>say (v.), tell (v.); statement (n.)</i>
sabihin ( <i>root</i> sabi)	<i>say (v.), tell (v.)</i>
saging	<i>banana</i>
saglit	<i>second</i>
sagot	<i>answer</i>
sais	<i>six</i>
sais siyentos	<i>six hundred</i>
sakit	<i>illness, sickness</i>
Salamat.	<i>Thank you.</i>
salita	<i>language, word, talk</i>
samakalawa	<i>day after tomorrow</i>
sampalok	<i>tamarind</i>

sampu	<i>ten</i>
sanay	<i>skilled (adj.)</i>
sandali	<i>moment</i>
sapatos	<i>shoes</i>
sara	<i>close, shut (root)</i>
sastre	<i>tailor</i>
sayaw	<i>dance (n.)</i>
sepilyo	<i>toothbrush</i>
serbesa	<i>beer</i>
sesenta	<i>sixty</i>
setenta	<i>seventy</i>
Setyembre	<i>September</i>
si	<i>marker used with names of people</i>
sibuyas	<i>onion</i>
sige	<i>goodbye, go ahead, okay, alright</i>
sigurado	<i>surely, definitely</i>
siguro	<i>perhaps</i>
sila	<i>they, you (fml. pl., ANG pronoun)</i>
silangan	<i>east</i>
sili	<i>pepper</i>
silya	<i>chair</i>
simula	<i>beginning, origin</i>
sina	<i>marker used with names of people (pl.)</i>
sine	<i>movie</i>
singko	<i>five</i>
singkuwenta	<i>fifty</i>
sining	<i>arts</i>
sino	<i>who (question word)</i>
Sino ito?	<i>Who is this?</i>
sipon	<i>cold</i>
sira	<i>break, defect</i>

siruhano	<i>surgeon</i>
siya	<i>he, she (ANG pronoun)</i>
siyam	<i>nine</i>
siyam na raan	<i>nine hundred</i>
siyamnapu	<i>ninety</i>
siyempre	<i>of course</i>
siyento	<i>one hundred</i>
siyento beyntisinko	<i>one hundred and twenty-five</i>
siyento dos	<i>one hundred and two</i>
siyento tres	<i>one hundred and three</i>
siyento uno	<i>one hundred and one</i>
siyete	<i>seven</i>
siyudad	<i>city</i>
sopa	<i>sofa</i>
subok	<i>test</i>
subukan ( <i>root</i> subok)	<i>try (v., neutral and command form)</i>
sugat	<i>wound</i>
sukat ( <i>root</i> )	<i>size (n.), try on (v.)</i>
sulat	<i>writing (n.)</i>
sulit	<i>worth it</i>
sumagot	<i>answer (v.)</i>
sumama ( <i>root</i> sama)	<i>come (v.), go with (v.)</i>
Sumama sa amin sa . . .	<i>Go with us to . . .</i>
sumasama ( <i>root</i> sama)	<i>joining, going with</i>
sumayaw	<i>dance (v.)</i>
sumulat ( <i>root</i> sulat)	<i>write (v.)</i>
suweldo	<i>salary</i>

## T

tabing-dagat	<i>beach</i>
taga	<i>from (used with place of origin)</i>

tag-araw	<i>summer</i>
tag-init	<i>summer</i>
taglagas	<i>autumn</i>
taglamig	<i>winter</i>
tagsibol	<i>spring</i>
tag-ulang	<i>rainy season</i>
tahi	<i>sewing (n.)</i>
tahimik	<i>quiet</i>
taksi	<i>taxi</i>
talo	<i>argument (n.)</i>
tama lang	<i>just right</i>
tanghali	<i>noon, late (referring to time)</i>
tanong	<i>question (n.)</i>
tao	<i>person, people</i>
Tao po!	<i>an expression used to announce that there's someone at the door</i>
taon	<i>year</i>
tapos	<i>then, afterwards; finish</i>
tatay	<i>father</i>
tatlo	<i>three</i>
tatlumpu	<i>thirty</i>
tawag	<i>call (n.)</i>
tawagan ako	<i>call me (v.)</i>
tawid	<i>crossing (n.)</i>
tayo	<i>we (incl., ANG pronoun)</i>
teka	<i>wait (v.)</i>
tenga	<i>ear</i>
tigil	<i>stop (n.)</i>
timog	<i>south</i>
tindahan	<i>store</i>
tingin	<i>look (n.)</i>
tingnan	<i>look (v. command)</i>

tira	<i>residence (n.)</i>
tita	<i>aunt, title for</i>
titingnan ( <i>root</i> tingin)	<i>will look at (v.)</i>
tito	<i>uncle, title for</i>
tiya	<i>aunt</i>
tiyo	<i>uncle</i>
trabaho	<i>job, work</i>
trangkasو	<i>flu</i>
tres	<i>three</i>
trese	<i>thirteen</i>
treynta	<i>thirty</i>
tsa	<i>tea</i>
tubig	<i>water</i>
tuhod	<i>knee</i>
tulog	<i>sleep</i>
tulong	<i>help (n.)</i>
tumawag ( <i>root</i> tawag)	<i>called</i>
tumawid ( <i>root</i> tawid)	<i>cross (v.)</i>
tumira ( <i>root</i> tira)	<i>stay, live</i>
tumitigil ( <i>root</i> tigil)	<i>stopping</i>
tungkol	<i>about</i>
turista (mga turista)	<i>tourist(s)</i>
turo	<i>teaching (n.)</i>

## U

ubas	<i>grape</i>
ubo	<i>cough</i>
ugnay	<i>connection (n.)</i>
uhaw	<i>thirst</i>
ulam	<i>viand, main dish eaten with rice</i>
ulan	<i>rain</i>

ulap	<i>cloud</i>
ulit	<i>again</i>
ulo	<i>head</i>
umaalis ng bahay	<i>leaves/leaving the house</i>
umaga	<i>morning</i>
umaraw	<i>get sunny (v.)</i>
uminit	<i>get hot (v.)</i>
uminom	<i>drink (v.)</i>
umulan	<i>get rainy (v.)</i>
umupo ( <i>root</i> upo)	<i>sit (v.)</i>
umuulan ( <i>root</i> ulan)	<i>raining</i>
umuwi ( <i>root</i> uwi)	<i>go home (v.), come home (v.)</i>
una	<i>first</i>
uno	<i>one</i>
upo	<i>sitting</i>
usap	<i>conversation</i>
uwi	<i>something that is brought home</i>

## W

wala	<i>nothing; lose (v.)</i>
Wala naman.	<i>Nothing much.</i>
Wala pa siya.	<i>He/She is not here yet.</i>
Wala pa.	<i>None yet.</i>
Walang anuman.	<i>It's nothing. You're welcome.</i>
walo	<i>eight</i>
walumpu	<i>eighty</i>

## Y

yari	<i>ready-made</i>
yata	<i>apparently, it seems, maybe, perhaps (marker of uncertainty)</i>

# Glossary

## English-Tagalog

### A

<i>a bit</i>	medyo
<i>a little</i>	kaunti
<i>a little while ago</i>	kanina
<i>about</i>	tungkol
<i>accustomed to, got</i>	(root sanay) nasanay (v.)
<i>acquaintance</i>	kilala
<i>acquaintance with, make an</i>	makipagkilala
<i>across from</i>	sa tapat
<i>action</i>	gawa
<i>afternoon</i>	hapon
<i>afterwards</i>	pagkatapos, tapos
<i>again</i>	ulit, na naman
<i>airplane</i>	eroplano
<i>alert</i>	handa
<i>alive</i>	buhay
<i>all</i>	lahat
<i>almost</i>	halos
<i>already</i>	na
<i>alright</i>	sige
<i>also</i>	din, rin
<i>although</i>	kahit
<i>always</i>	lagi, palagi

<i>a.m.</i>	ng umaga
<i>and</i>	at
<i>answer</i>	sagot ( <i>n.</i> ); ( <i>root sagot</i> ) sumagot ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>apparently</i>	yata
<i>April</i>	Abril
<i>are there</i>	nandiyan
<i>argue with</i>	makipagtalo
<i>argument</i>	talo
<i>arm</i>	braso
<i>arrival</i>	dating, pagdating ( <i>ang</i> )
<i>arrive</i>	( <i>root dating</i> ) dumating, dumarating, darating ( <i>future</i> )
<i>arts</i>	sining
<i>ask</i>	( <i>root tanong</i> ) magtanong ( <i>a question</i> ), pakitanong ( <i>please ask</i> )
<i>at</i>	nasa
<i>at last</i>	sa wakas
<i>at noon</i>	sa tanghali
<i>August</i>	Agosto
<i>aunt</i>	tiya, tita ( <i>title</i> )
<i>autumn</i>	taglagas
<i>avocado</i>	abukado

## B

<i>bachelor</i>	binata
<i>bachelorette</i>	dalaga
<i>back</i>	likod
<i>bad</i>	masama
<i>banana</i>	saging
<i>bank</i>	bangko
<i>banker</i>	bangkero
<i>bathroom</i>	banyo

<i>be able to</i>	marunong
<i>beach</i>	tabing-dagat, aplaya
<i>beautiful</i>	maganda
<i>beauty</i>	ganda
<i>because</i>	kasi, dahil
<i>bed</i>	kama
<i>bedroom</i>	kuwarto
<i>beef</i>	baka
<i>beer</i>	serbesa
<i>befriend</i>	(root kaibigan) makipagkaibigan (v.)
<i>beginning</i>	simula
<i>bend</i>	bali
<i>big</i>	malaki
<i>bill</i>	chit
<i>black</i>	itim
<i>bland</i>	matabang
<i>blouse</i>	blusa
<i>blue</i>	asul
<i>book</i>	libro
<i>borrow</i>	(root hiram) humiram
<i>borrowed</i>	hiram
<i>bottoms</i>	pang-ibaba
<i>break</i>	bali, sira
<i>breakfast</i>	almusal
<i>breakfast, eat/have</i>	(root almusal) mag-almusal, nag-almusal
<i>bring</i>	(root dala) dalhan (v., command form)
<i>broke</i>	(root sira) nasira
<i>brother</i>	kuya (older), bunso (younger)
<i>brought</i>	dala (adj.)
<i>brush one's teeth</i>	(root sepilyo) magsepilyo (v.), nagsesepilyo

<i>bus</i>	bus
<i>businessperson</i>	mangangalakal, negosyante
<i>but</i>	pero
<i>buy</i>	( <i>root bili</i> ) bilhin, bumili
<i>by the way</i>	nga pala

## C

<i>call</i>	tawag ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>call me</i>	( <i>root tawag</i> ) tawagan ako ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>call, have someone</i>	( <i>root tawag</i> ) magpatawag
<i>called</i>	( <i>root tawag</i> ) tumawag
<i>Can I . . . ?</i>	Puwedeng . . .
<i>carried</i>	dala ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>carrot</i>	karot
<i>chair</i>	silya
<i>change</i>	( <i>root palit</i> ) magpapalit ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>cheap</i>	mura
<i>check</i>	chit
<i>chest</i>	dibdib
<i>chicken</i>	manok
<i>child</i>	bata, anak; bunso ( <i>youngest</i> )
<i>church, go to</i>	( <i>root simba</i> ) magsimba
<i>city</i>	lungsod, siyudad
<i>class</i>	klase
<i>clean</i>	malinis
<i>clear</i>	malinaw
<i>climb</i>	( <i>root akyat</i> ) umakyat ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>close</i>	( <i>root sara</i> ) isara ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>clothes</i>	damit
<i>cloud</i>	ulap
<i>cloudy</i>	maulap

<i>coconut milk</i>	gata
<i>coffee</i>	kaape
<i>cold</i>	lamig ( <i>n.</i> ); malamig ( <i>adj.</i> ); ( <i>root lamig</i> ) lumamig ( <i>get cold</i> ); sipon ( <i>illness</i> )
<i>college</i>	kolehiyo
<i>color</i>	kulay
<i>come</i>	( <i>root dating</i> ) dumating, darating ( <i>future</i> ); ( <i>root sama</i> ) sumama
<i>come (from)</i>	galing
<i>Come back.</i>	Balik ka/kayo.
<i>come home</i>	( <i>root uwi</i> ) umuwi
<i>Come visit again.</i>	Dalaw ka ultit.
<i>coming</i>	( <i>root dating</i> ) pagdating (ang), ( <i>root punta</i> ) pagpunta (ang)
<i>complete</i>	kumpleto
<i>connect with</i>	makipag-ugnay
<i>connection</i>	ugnay
<i>conversation</i>	usap
<i>converse</i>	( <i>root usap</i> ) mag-usap, makausap ( <i>be able to</i> )
<i>cook</i>	( <i>root luto</i> ) magluto, magpaluto ( <i>have something cooked</i> ), kaluluto ( <i>have just cooked</i> )
<i>cooking</i>	luto
<i>cool</i>	presko
<i>cool off</i>	( <i>root lamig</i> ) magpalamig
<i>corner</i>	kanto
<i>cough</i>	ubo
<i>country</i>	bayan
<i>cow</i>	baka
<i>cross</i>	( <i>root tawid</i> ) tumawid
<i>crossing</i>	tawid
<i>crunchy</i>	malutong

*cry* (root iyak) umiyak, magpaiyak  
(make someone cry)

*cuisine* luto

*cure* (root gamot) gumamot, gamutin (v.)

## D

*dance* sayaw (n.); (root sayaw) sumayaw  
(v.), makipagsayaw (dance with)

*dark* madilim (adj.)

*darkness* dilim

*dark-skinned* maitim

*day* araw

*day after tomorrow* samakalawa

*day before yesterday* kamakalawa

*December* Disyembre

*decorative* pangdekorasyon

*deed* gawa (n.)

*defect* sira

*definitely* sigurado

*delicious* masarap

*dentist* dentista

*departure* alis

*descend* (root baba) bumaba

*descent* baba

*dessert* panghimagas

*destination* punta

*difficult* mahirap

*dining room* komedor

*dinner* hapunan (n.)

*dinner, eat* (root hapunan) maghapunan (v.)

*dirty* marumi

*diversion* libangan (n.)

<i>diversion, have a</i>	(root libang) maglibang (v.)
<i>doctor</i>	doktor
<i>dollar</i>	dolyar
<i>don't</i>	huwag ( <i>negative word in a command</i> )
<i>down, go</i>	(root baba) bumaba (v.)
<i>dress</i>	bestida
<i>drink</i>	inumin (n.); (root inom) uminom (v.)
<i>drinking</i>	inom, pag-inom (ang)

## E

<i>ear</i>	tenga
<i>earlier today</i>	kanina
<i>early</i>	maaga
<i>earthquake</i>	lindol
<i>east</i>	silangan
<i>easy</i>	madali
<i>eat</i>	(root kain) kumain
<i>eat breakfast</i>	(root almusal) mag-almusal (v.)
<i>eat dinner</i>	(root hapunan) maghapunan (v.)
<i>egg</i>	itlog
<i>eight</i>	walo, otso
<i>eighteen</i>	labing-walo, diyesiotso
<i>eighth</i>	pangwalo
<i>eighty</i>	walumpu, otsenta
<i>elementary school</i>	mababang paaralan
<i>eleven</i>	labing-isa, onse
<i>equally</i>	magkasing- ( <i>prefix</i> )
<i>evening</i>	gabi
<i>exchange</i>	palit (n.); (root palit) magpapalit (v.)
<i>exchange money</i>	magpapalit ng pera (v.)
<i>exchange rate</i>	palitan
<i>exercise</i>	ehersisy

<i>expensive</i>	mahal
<i>eye</i>	mata
<b>F</b>	
<i>face</i>	mukha
<i>fall</i>	bagsak ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>fall on oneself, have something</i>	(root dagan) nadaganan ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>familiar</i>	kilala ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>family</i>	pamilya
<i>far</i>	malayo
<i>fast</i>	mabilis
<i>fat</i>	mataba
<i>father</i>	tatay
<i>February</i>	Pebrero
<i>feed</i>	(root kain) magpakain ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>feeling</i>	pakiramdam
<i>feeling one's way around</i>	(root kapa) nangangapa
<i>feet</i>	paa
<i>fell</i>	(root bagsak) bumagsak ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>female, single</i>	dalaga
<i>fever</i>	lagnat
<i>few</i>	kaunti
<i>fifteen</i>	labing-lima, kinse
<i>fifth</i>	panglima
<i>fifty</i>	limampu, singkuwenta
<i>fight</i>	away ( <i>n.</i> ), laban ( <i>n.</i> ); (root away) makipag-away ( <i>fight with</i> ), napaaway ( <i>got into a fight</i> ); (root laban) makipaglaban ( <i>fight with</i> )
<i>finding</i>	(root hanap) hinahanap
<i>fine</i>	mabait, mabuti
<i>finger</i>	daliri

<i>finish</i>	tapos
<i>first</i>	una
<i>first-born</i>	panganay
<i>fish</i>	isda
<i>five</i>	lima, singko
<i>fix</i>	(root ayos) mag-ayos (v.), magpaayos ( <i>have something fixed</i> )
<i>flavorful</i>	malasa
<i>flood</i>	baha (n.)
<i>flu</i>	trangkas
<i>fond of</i>	mahilig
<i>for</i>	para
<i>forehead</i>	noo
<i>forest</i>	gubat
<i>former</i>	dati
<i>formerly</i>	dati
<i>forty</i>	apatnapu, kuwarenta
<i>four</i>	apat, kuwatro
<i>four hundred</i>	apat na raan, kuwatro siyentos
<i>fourteen</i>	labing-apat, katorse
<i>fourth</i>	pangapat
<i>Friday</i>	Biyernes
<i>friend</i>	kaibigan (n.)
<i>friends with, make</i>	(root kaibigan) makipagkaibigan (v.)
<i>from</i>	taga ( <i>used with place of origin</i> )
<i>full</i>	busog (adj.)
<i>furniture</i>	muwebles

## G

<i>game</i>	laro (n.)
<i>garden</i>	hardin
<i>garlic</i>	bawang

<i>gasoline station</i>	gasolinahan
<i>get</i>	(root kuha) kumuha (v.), pakikuha ng . . . (please get me some . . .)
<i>get a haircut</i>	(root gupit) magpagupit (v.)
<i>get a massage</i>	(root masahé) magpamasahé (v.)
<i>get an infection</i>	(root impeksyon) magkaimpeksyon (v.)
<i>get cold</i>	(root lamig) lumamig (v.)
<i>get hot</i>	(root init) uminit (v.)
<i>get married</i>	(root kasal) magpakasal (v.)
<i>get rainy</i>	(root ulan) umulan (v.)
<i>get ready</i>	(root ayos) mag-ayos (v.)
<i>getting ready</i>	(root ayos) nag-aayos (v.)
<i>get sunny</i>	(root araw) umaraw (v.)
<i>get to know</i>	(root kilala) makilala (v.)
<i>gift</i>	pasalubong, regalo, bigay
<i>give</i>	(root bigay) bigyan (v.)
<i>Give me a/an/some . . .</i>	Bigyan mo ako ng . . .
<i>giving</i>	bigay
<i>Glad to meet you. (fml.)</i>	Kinagagalak ko kayong/silang makilala.
<i>Glad to meet you. (infml.)</i>	Kinagagalak kitang makilala.
<i>go</i>	(root punta) pupunta (v.), kapupunta (have just gone)
<i>go ahead</i>	sige
<i>go down</i>	(root baba) bumaba (v.)
<i>go home</i>	(root uwi) umuwi (v.)
<i>go in</i>	(root pasok) pumasok (v.)
<i>go out</i>	(root labas) lumabas (v.)
<i>go to church</i>	(root simba) magsimba (v.)
<i>go with</i>	(root sama) sumama (v.); sumama sa amin sa (go with us to)
<i>godfather</i>	ninong

<i>going</i>	( <i>root punta</i> ) pagpunta (ang) (n.)
<i>going with</i>	( <i>root sama</i> ) sumasama
<i>good</i>	mabait, mabuti, maganda
<i>Good afternoon!</i>	Magandang hapon!
<i>Good evening!</i>	Magandang gabi!
<i>good health</i>	mabuting kalusugan
<i>Good morning!</i>	Magandang umaga!
<i>Good noon!</i>	Magandang tanghali!
<i>Good-bye!</i>	Paalam! ( <i>fml.</i> )
<i>good-bye</i>	sige ( <i>infml.</i> )
<i>got accustomed to</i>	( <i>root sanay</i> ) nasanay (v.)
<i>got into a fight</i>	( <i>root away</i> ) napaaway (v.)
<i>got tired</i>	( <i>root pagod</i> ) napagod (v.)
<i>got used to</i>	( <i>root sanay</i> ) nasanay (v.)
<i>grandchild</i>	apo
<i>grandfather</i>	lolo
<i>grandmother</i>	lola
<i>grape</i>	ubas
<i>green</i>	berde
<i>groping</i>	( <i>root kapa</i> ) nangangapa
<i>guest</i>	dalaw, bisita

## H

<i>hail</i>	( <i>root para</i> ) pumara ( <i>transportation</i> )
<i>hair salon</i>	pagupitan
<i>haircut</i>	gupit
<i>haircut, get a</i>	( <i>root gupit</i> ) magpagupit (v.)
<i>hand</i>	kamay
<i>handsome</i>	guwapo
<i>happened</i>	( <i>root yari</i> ) nangyari
<i>happy, make someone or something</i>	( <i>root saya</i> ) magpasaya (v.)

<i>hard</i>	mahirap
<i>have</i>	may, mayroon; Mayroon kayong . . . ? ( <i>Do you have . . . ?</i> )
<i>have dinner</i>	(root hapunan) humapunan (v.)
<i>he</i>	siya (ANG pronoun)
<i>head</i>	ulo
<i>health</i>	kalusugan
<i>heat</i>	init
<i>hello</i>	hello
<i>help</i>	tulong (n.)
<i>her</i>	niya (NG pronoun), kaniya (SA pronoun)
<i>here</i>	dito, rito, ito
<i>hers</i>	sa kaniya
<i>hey</i>	hoy
<i>high school</i>	mataas na paaralan
<i>hill</i>	burol
<i>him</i>	niya (NG pronoun), kaniya (SA pronoun)
<i>his</i>	niya (NG pronoun), kaniya (SA pronoun), sa kaniya
<i>history</i>	kasaysayan
<i>hold</i>	hawak (n.); (root hawak) hawakan (v.)
<i>hot</i>	mainit (adj.); (root init) uminit (get hot)
<i>hot soup</i>	mainit na sabaw
<i>hours</i>	oras
<i>house</i>	bahay
<i>housewares</i>	kasangkapan sa bahay
<i>how</i>	gaano (question word, qualitative and quantitative); paano (question word, manner or means); Kamusta ka/kayo/sila? ( <i>How are you?</i> ); Ano'ng pakiramdam mo? ( <i>How do you feel?</i> )

<i>how far</i>	gaano kalayo
<i>how long</i>	gaano katagal ( <i>duration</i> )
<i>how many</i>	ilan ( <i>question word</i> )
<i>how much</i>	magkano ( <i>question word</i> ); Magkano ito? ( <i>How much is this?</i> )
<i>how near</i>	gaano kalapit
<i>how old</i>	ilang taon ( <i>question word</i> )
<i>hunger</i>	gutom
<i>hurt</i>	masakit ( <i>adj.</i> ); Masakit ang . . . ko. ( <i>My . . . hurts.</i> )

## I

<i>I</i>	ako ( <i>ANG pronoun</i> )
<i>I don't know.</i>	Hindi ko alam. ( <i>a fact</i> ); Hindi ako marunong. ( <i>how to do something</i> )
<i>I don't like that.</i>	Hindi ko gusto 'yan.
<i>I don't like/want . . .</i>	Ayaw ko . . .
<i>I have . . .</i>	May . . . ako.
<i>I like/want . . .</i>	Gusto ko . . .
<i>I need . . .</i>	Kailangan ko . . .
<i>I want to . . .</i>	Gusto kong . . .
<i>I would like/want . . .</i>	Gusto ko ng . . .
<i>I'm late.</i>	Huli ako.
<i>I'm looking for . . .</i>	Hinahanap ko ang . . .
<i>I'm lost.</i>	Nawawala ako.
<i>if possible</i>	kung puwede
<i>illness</i>	sakit
<i>important</i>	importante
<i>in</i>	nasa, sa
<i>in bad health</i>	masama ang kalusugan
<i>in front of</i>	sa tapat

<i>in order to</i>	para
<i>in the afternoon</i>	sa hapon, ng hapon
<i>in the evening</i>	sa gabi, ng gabi
<i>in the morning</i>	sa umaga, ng umaga
<i>included</i>	kasama
<i>incomplete</i>	kulang
<i>indulge in something leisurely</i>	(root libang) maglibang (v.)
<i>infection</i>	impeksyon; (root impeksyon) magkaimpeksyon (get an infection)
<i>iron</i>	plantsa (n.); (root plantsa) mag- plantsa (v.), magpaplantsa (have clothes ironed)
<i>Is there a . . . /Is there no . . . around here?</i>	Mayroon/wala ba ditong . . . ?
<i>Is . . . (someone) there?</i>	Nandiyan ba si . . . ?
<i>island</i>	pulo
<i>it depends</i>	depende
<i>it seems</i>	yata
<i>it's been a while since</i>	matagal na
<i>It's nothing.</i>	Walang anuman.

## J

<i>January</i>	Enero
<i>jewelry</i>	alahas
<i>job</i>	trabaho
<i>joining with</i>	(root sama) sumasama
<i>juice</i>	dyus
<i>July</i>	Hulyo
<i>June</i>	Hunyo
<i>just</i>	lang
<i>Just around here.</i>	Diyang lang. (lit., Only there.)
<i>just right</i>	tama lang

## K

<i>kind</i>	mabait, mabuti
<i>kitchen</i>	kusina
<i>kitchenware</i>	kasangkapan sa kusina
<i>knee</i>	tuhod
<i>know</i>	alam (v.); (root kilala) kumilala (v.)
<i>know how</i>	marunong
<i>know where, do you</i>	Alam mo/ninyo kung . . . ?
<i>know, do you</i>	Alam mo . . . ?; Kilala mo si . . . ?
<i>known</i>	kilala (adj.)

## L

<i>lacking</i>	kulang
<i>lake</i>	lawa
<i>language</i>	salita
<i>last</i>	huli
<i>last month</i>	noong isang buwan
<i>last night</i>	kagabi
<i>last week</i>	noong isang linggo
<i>last year</i>	noong isang taon
<i>late</i>	huli ( <i>people and things</i> ); tanghali ( <i>time</i> )
<i>later</i>	mamaya
<i>later tonight</i>	mamayang gabi
<i>laundry</i>	labada
<i>laundry washed, have</i>	(root laba) magpalaba (v.)
<i>leather</i>	balat
<i>leave</i>	(root alis) umalis (v.)
<i>leave (something or someone)</i>	(root iwan) mag-iwan (v.)
<i>leave the house</i>	(root alis) umalis ng bahay (v.), kaaalis ( <i>have just left</i> )
<i>left</i>	kaliwa ( <i>direction</i> )

<i>leg</i>	binti
<i>leisure</i>	libangan
<i>Let's go.</i>	Halika.
<i>library</i>	aklatan
<i>life</i>	buhay
<i>light</i>	liwanag ( <i>n.</i> ); maliwanag ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>light rain</i>	ambon
<i>lightning</i>	kidlat
<i>light-skinned</i>	maputi
<i>like</i>	gusto ( <i>modal</i> ); Gusto mo/ninyo ng . . . ? ( <i>Do you like . . . ?</i> )
<i>lime</i>	dayap
<i>listen</i>	( <i>root</i> kinig) makinig ( <i>v.</i> ), nakikinig ( <i>listening</i> )
<i>little</i>	kaunti ( <i>in number</i> )
<i>live</i>	( <i>root</i> tira) tumira ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>living</i>	nakatira
<i>long while</i>	matagal
<i>look</i>	tingin ( <i>n.</i> ); ( <i>root</i> tingin) tingnan ( <i>v. command</i> ), titingnan ( <i>look at</i> )
<i>looking for</i>	( <i>root</i> hanap) hinahanap
<i>lose</i>	( <i>root</i> wala) iwala ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>lost</i>	nawawala ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>loud</i>	maingay
<i>luggage</i>	maleta
<i>lunch, have</i>	( <i>root</i> tanghalian) mananghalian ( <i>v.</i> )

## M

<i>made</i>	( <i>root</i> gawa) gumawa ( <i>v.</i> ), magpagawa ng . . . ( <i>have something made</i> )
<i>mail a letter</i>	( <i>root</i> hulog) maghulog ng sulat ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>make an acquaintance with</i>	( <i>root</i> kilala) makipagkilala ( <i>v.</i> )

<i>make friends with</i>	(root <i>kaibigan</i> ) <i>makipagkaibigan</i> (v.)
<i>make someone cry</i>	(root <i>iyak</i> ) <i>magpaiyak</i> (v.)
<i>make someone or something happy</i>	(root <i>saya</i> ) <i>magpasaya</i> (v.)
<i>make someone or something sad</i>	(root <i>lungkot</i> ) <i>magpalungkot</i> (v.)
<i>male, single</i>	<i>binata</i>
<i>man</i>	<i>lalaki</i>
<i>mango</i>	<i>mangga</i>
<i>many</i>	<i>marami</i>
<i>March</i>	<i>Marso</i>
<i>married, get</i>	(root <i>kasal</i> ) <i>magpakasal</i> (v.)
<i>massage, get a</i>	(root <i>masahe</i> ) <i>magpamasahé</i> (v.)
<i>mathematics</i>	<i>matematika</i>
<i>May</i>	<i>Mayo</i>
<i>maybe</i>	<i>yata; baka</i>
<i>me</i>	<i>ko (NG pronoun)</i> , <i>akin (SA pronoun)</i>
<i>meat</i>	<i>karne</i>
<i>medicine</i>	<i>gamot</i>
<i>meet</i>	(root <i>kita</i> ) <i>magkita</i> (v.), (root <i>kilala</i> ) <i>makilala</i> (v.)
<i>meet with</i>	(root <i>meeting</i> ) <i>makipagmeeting</i> (v.)
<i>meeting</i>	<i>meeting</i> (n.)
<i>men's</i>	<i>na panglalaki</i>
<i>messy</i>	<i>makalat</i>
<i>midnight</i>	<i>hating-gabi, ng hating-gabi</i>
<i>might</i>	<i>baka</i>
<i>milk</i>	<i>gatas</i>
<i>mine</i>	<i>sa akin</i>
<i>minute</i>	<i>minuto</i>
<i>moment</i>	<i>sandali</i>
<i>Monday</i>	<i>Lunes</i>

<i>money</i>	pera
<i>month</i>	buwan
<i>more</i>	mas ( <i>used in comparisons</i> )
<i>morning</i>	umaga
<i>most</i>	pinaka- ( <i>prefix</i> )
<i>most likely</i>	malamang
<i>mother</i>	nanay
<i>mountain</i>	bundok
<i>mouth</i>	bibig
<i>move</i>	paglipat ( <i>n.</i> ); ( <i>root galaw</i> ) gumalaw ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>movie</i>	sine
<i>Mrs.</i>	Ginang
<i>must</i>	dapat
<i>my</i>	ko ( <i>NG pronoun</i> ), akin ( <i>SA pronoun</i> )
<i>My apologies.</i>	Pasyensiya ka na./Pasyensiya na kayo.

## N

<i>near</i>	malapit
<i>neat</i>	maayos
<i>neck</i>	leeg; batok
<i>need</i>	kailangan ( <i>modal</i> )
<i>nephew</i>	pamangkin
<i>new</i>	bago
<i>news</i>	balita
<i>next to</i>	sa tabi
<i>next week</i>	sa isang linggo
<i>nice</i>	maganda
<i>niece</i>	pamangkin
<i>nine</i>	siyam, nuwebe
<i>nine hundred</i>	siyam na raan, nuwebe siyentos

<i>nineteen</i>	labing-siyam, diyesinuwebe
<i>ninety</i>	siyamnapu, nobenta
<i>ninth</i>	pangsiyam
<i>no</i>	hindi
<i>noisy</i>	maingay
<i>noon</i>	tanghali, ng tanghali
<i>north</i>	hilaga
<i>nose</i>	ilong
<i>not enough</i>	kulang
<i>nothing</i>	wala
<i>Nothing much.</i>	Wala naman.
<i>November</i>	Nobyembre
<i>now</i>	na, ngayon
<i>number</i>	numero
<i>nurse</i>	nars

## 0

<i>ocean</i>	dagat
<i>October</i>	Oktubre
<i>of course</i>	siyempre
<i>office mate</i>	kaopisina
<i>offspring</i>	anak
<i>okay</i>	sige
<i>old</i>	matanda ( <i>person</i> ), luma ( <i>thing</i> )
<i>older brother</i>	kuya
<i>older sister</i>	ate
<i>on</i>	nasa
<i>one</i>	isa, uno
<i>one hundred</i>	isang daan, siyento
<i>one million</i>	isang milyon
<i>one thousand</i>	isang libo, isanlibo, mil

<i>onion</i>	sibuyas
<i>only</i>	lang
<i>orange</i>	naranghita ( <i>fruit</i> )
<i>order</i>	ayos
<i>origin</i>	simula
<i>Ouch!</i>	Aray!
<i>our</i>	namin ( <i>excl. NG pronoun</i> ), natin ( <i>incl. NG pronoun</i> ), amin ( <i>excl. SA pronoun</i> ), atin ( <i>incl. SA pronoun</i> )
<i>ours</i>	sa amin ( <i>excl.</i> ), sa atin ( <i>incl.</i> )
<i>over there</i>	doon
<i>overtime</i>	obertaym

## P

<i>painful</i>	masakit ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>pants</i>	pantalon
<i>parent</i>	magulang
<i>pay</i>	( <i>root bayad</i> ) magbabayad ( <i>v. future</i> )
<i>payment</i>	bayad
<i>peanut</i>	mani
<i>people</i>	tao
<i>pepper</i>	paminta, sili
<i>perhaps</i>	yata, baka, siguro, kaya
<i>person</i>	tao
<i>photographed, get</i>	( <i>root kuha</i> ) magpakuha ng retrato ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>pickled fried grouper fish</i>	escabecheng lapu-lapu
<i>pig</i>	baboy; litson, lechon ( <i>roast</i> )
<i>pineapple</i>	pinya
<i>plan</i>	balak
<i>play</i>	( <i>root laro</i> ) naglalaro ( <i>playing</i> ), makipaglaro ( <i>play with</i> ), kalalaro ( <i>have just played</i> )

<i>please ask</i>	(root tanong) pakitanong
<i>Please ask if...</i>	Pakitanong kung ...
<i>Please ask what...</i>	Pakitanong kung ano ...
<i>Please ask when...</i>	Pakitanong kung kailan ...
<i>Please ask where...</i>	Pakitanong kung saan ...
<i>Please ask which...</i>	Pakitanong kung alin ...
<i>please tell</i>	pakisabi (root sabi)
<i>p.m.</i>	ng hapon
<i>pneumonia</i>	pulmonya
<i>poor</i>	mahirap
<i>praise</i>	puri (n.)
<i>prepare</i>	(root handa) naghahanda, maghanda, humanda
<i>prepare oneself</i>	(root ayos) nag-aayos (v.)
<i>prepared food</i>	handa (n.)
<i>professor</i>	propesor
<i>put, have/has just</i>	(root lagay) kalalagay (v.)

## Q

<i>question</i>	tanong (n.)
<i>question, ask a</i>	(root tanong) magtanong (v.)
<i>quiet</i>	tahimik

## R

<i>rain</i>	ulan
<i>rain, light</i>	ambon
<i>raining</i>	(root ulan) umuulan (v.), umulan (get rainy)
<i>rainy season</i>	tag-ulan
<i>read</i>	(root basa) magbasa (v.); pagbasa (reading)
<i>ready</i>	handa
<i>ready-made</i>	yari

<i>red</i>	pula
<i>relative</i>	kamag-anak
<i>rent</i>	(root hiram) humiram (v.)
<i>repaired, have something</i>	(root gawa) magpagawa ng . . . (v.)
<i>replaced</i>	(root palit) pumalit (v.)
<i>residence</i>	tirahan (n.)
<i>resident of</i>	(root tira) nakatira
<i>rest</i>	magpahinga (v.)
<i>return</i>	balik
<i>rice</i>	kanin
<i>rice noodle</i>	bihon
<i>rich</i>	mayaman
<i>right</i>	kanan
<i>right away</i>	agad
<i>right now</i>	ngayon din
<i>right this moment</i>	ngayon din
<i>river</i>	ilog
<i>roast pig</i>	litson, lechon

## S

<i>sad, make someone or something</i>	(root lungkot) magpalungkot (v.)
<i>salary</i>	suweldo
<i>salt</i>	asin
<i>salty</i>	maalat
<i>satisfied</i>	busog (adj., relating to food)
<i>Saturday</i>	Sabado
<i>say</i>	(root sabi) sabihin (v.)
<i>school</i>	eskuwela, paaralan, pasok
<i>sciences</i>	agham
<i>sea</i>	dagat
<i>search</i>	hanap (n.)
<i>season</i>	panahon

<i>second</i>	pangalawa ( <i>ordinal number</i> ); saglit ( <i>unit of time</i> )
<i>see each other</i>	( <i>root kita</i> ) magkita
<i>seen</i>	kita ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>sell</i>	magbili
<i>September</i>	Setyembre
<i>seven</i>	pito, siyete
<i>seventeen</i>	labing-pito, diyesisiyete
<i>seventh</i>	pangpito
<i>seventy</i>	pitumpu, setenta
<i>sew</i>	( <i>root tahi</i> ) tumahi
<i>sewing</i>	tahi ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>sewn, have an article of clothing</i>	( <i>root tahi</i> ) magpatahi ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>she</i>	siya ( <i>ANG pronoun</i> )
<i>shirt, traditional Filipino</i>	barang tagalog
<i>shoes</i>	sapatos
<i>short</i>	maliit
<i>should</i>	dapat
<i>shoulder</i>	balikat
<i>shrimp paste</i>	bagoong
<i>shut</i>	( <i>root sara</i> ) isara ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>sibling</i>	kapatid, bunso ( <i>youngest</i> )
<i>sickness</i>	sakit
<i>single female</i>	dalaga
<i>single male</i>	binata
<i>sister</i>	ate ( <i>older</i> ), bunso ( <i>younger</i> )
<i>sit</i>	( <i>root upo</i> ) umupo ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>situation</i>	lagay
<i>six</i>	anim, sais
<i>six hundred</i>	anim na raan, sais siyentos
<i>sixteen</i>	labing-anim, diyesisais
<i>sixth</i>	panganim

<i>sixty</i>	animnapu, sesenta
<i>size</i>	sukat ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>skilled</i>	sanay ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>skin</i>	balat
<i>skirt</i>	palda
<i>sleep</i>	(root tulog) matulog ( <i>v.</i> ), matutulog ( <i>future</i> )
<i>slow</i>	mabagal
<i>small</i>	maliit
<i>smart</i>	matalino
<i>social studies</i>	araling panlipunan
<i>socks</i>	medyas
<i>sofa</i>	sopa
<i>soft</i>	lambot
<i>sore</i>	masakit ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>soup, (a kind of)</i>	bulalo
<i>south</i>	timog
<i>speak</i>	(root salita) magsalita
<i>speak to, be able to</i>	(root usap) makausap ( <i>v.</i> ), nakausap ( <i>past</i> )
<i>spicy</i>	maanghang
<i>sport</i>	laro ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>spouse</i>	asawa
<i>sprain</i>	pilay ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>sprained, have something</i>	(root pilay) napilayan ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>spring</i>	tagsibol
<i>started, have/has just</i>	(root simula) kasisimula ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>statement</i>	sabi
<i>status</i>	lagay
<i>stay</i>	(root tira) tumira
<i>steal</i>	nakaw
<i>still</i>	pa

<i>stop</i>	( <i>root</i> <i>tigil</i> ) <i>tumigil</i> ( <i>v.</i> ); ( <i>root</i> <i>para</i> ) <i>pumara</i>
<i>store</i>	<i>tindahan</i>
<i>straight</i>	<i>deretso</i>
<i>street</i>	<i>kalye, daan</i>
<i>stroll, take a</i>	( <i>root</i> <i>pasyal</i> ) <i>magpasyal</i>
<i>strong</i>	<i>malakas</i>
<i>student</i>	<i>estudyante</i>
<i>studies</i>	<i>pag-aaral</i>
<i>study</i>	( <i>root</i> <i>aral</i> ) <i>mag-aral</i> ( <i>v.</i> ), <i>nag-aaral</i> ( <i>studying</i> )
<i>stupid</i>	<i>bobo</i>
<i>sugar</i>	<i>asukal</i>
<i>suit</i>	<i>amerikana</i>
<i>summer</i>	<i>tag-araw, tag-init</i>
<i>sun</i>	<i>araw</i>
<i>Sunday</i>	<i>Linggo</i>
<i>sunny</i>	<i>maaraw</i>
<i>sunny, get</i>	( <i>root</i> <i>araw</i> ) <i>umaraw</i> ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>surely</i>	<i>sigurado</i>
<i>surgeon</i>	<i>siruhano</i>
<i>sweet</i>	<i>matamis</i>

## T

<i>table</i>	<i>lamesa, mesa</i>
<i>tailor</i>	<i>sastre</i>
<i>tailored, have something</i>	( <i>root</i> <i>tahi</i> ) <i>magpatahi</i> ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>take a stroll</i>	( <i>root</i> <i>pasyal</i> ) <i>magpasyal</i>
<i>Take care.</i>	<i>Ingat ka.</i>
<i>talk</i>	( <i>root</i> <i>salita</i> ) <i>magsalita</i> ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>tall</i>	<i>matangkad</i>
<i>tamarind</i>	<i>sampalok</i>

<i>taxi</i>	taksi
<i>tea</i>	tsa
<i>teach</i>	(root <i>turo</i> ) <i>magturo</i> ( <i>v.</i> ), <i>magpature</i> ( <i>have someone teach</i> )
<i>teacher</i>	guro
<i>teaching</i>	<i>turo</i> ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>tell</i>	(root <i>sabi</i> ) <i>sabihin</i> , <i>pakisabi</i> ( <i>please tell</i> )
<i>telling</i>	<i>pagsabi</i> ( <i>ang</i> ) ( <i>n.</i> )
<i>ten</i>	sampu, diyes
<i>tenth</i>	pangsampu
<i>test</i>	subok
<i>Thank you.</i>	Salamat.
<i>that</i>	<i>iyan</i> ( <i>ANG pronoun</i> ), <i>niyan</i> ( <i>NG pronoun</i> )
<i>that over there</i>	<i>iyon</i> ( <i>ANG pronoun</i> ), <i>niyon</i> ( <i>NG pronoun</i> )
<i>that's why</i>	kaya
<i>their</i>	<i>nila</i> ( <i>NG pronoun</i> ), <i>kanila</i> ( <i>SA pronoun</i> )
<i>theirs</i>	sa <i>kanila</i>
<i>them</i>	<i>nila</i> ( <i>NG pronoun</i> ), <i>kanila</i> ( <i>SA pronoun</i> )
<i>then</i>	tapos
<i>there</i>	<i>diyan</i> , <i>ayan</i> ( <i>demonstrative</i> )
<i>there are</i>	may, mayroon
<i>there is</i>	may, mayroon
<i>There's someone at the door!</i>	Tao po!
<i>they</i>	<i>sila</i> ( <i>fm. pl.</i> , <i>ANG pronoun</i> )
<i>thin</i>	payat
<i>third</i>	pangatlo
<i>thirst</i>	uhaw

<i>thirteen</i>	labing-tatlo, trese
<i>thirty</i>	tatlumpu, treynta
<i>this</i>	ito ( <i>ANG pronoun</i> ), nito ( <i>NG pronoun</i> )
<i>this afternoon</i>	ngayong hapon
<i>this evening</i>	ngayong gabi
<i>this morning</i>	ngayong umaga
<i>this noon</i>	ngayong tanghali
<i>three</i>	tatlo, tres
<i>thunder</i>	kulog
<i>Thursday</i>	Huwебес
<i>tidiness</i>	ayos
<i>tie</i>	korbata
<i>time</i>	oras, panahon
<i>tired</i>	pagod ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>tired, got</i>	( <i>root pagod</i> ) napagod ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>to the left</i>	sa kaliwa
<i>to the right</i>	sa kanan
<i>to us</i>	sa amin
<i>today</i>	ngayon
<i>tomorrow</i>	bukas
<i>too</i>	din, rin ( <i>as well</i> ); masyado ( <i>quantity</i> )
<i>tooth</i>	ngipin
<i>toothbrush</i>	sepilyo
<i>tops</i>	pang-itaas
<i>tourist(s)</i>	turista (mga turista)
<i>toys</i>	laruan
<i>treat (illness)</i>	( <i>root gamot</i> ) gagamutin ( <i>v. future</i> )
<i>trip</i>	biyahe
<i>try</i>	( <i>root subok</i> ) subukan ( <i>v.</i> )

<i>try on</i>	sukat
<i>Tuesday</i>	Martes
<i>Turn . . .</i>	Lumiko ka/kayo . . .
<i>twelve</i>	labing-dalawa, dose
<i>twenty</i>	dalawampu, beynte
<i>two</i>	dalawa, dos
<i>typhoon</i>	bagyo

## U

<i>ugly</i>	pangit
<i>uncle</i>	tiyo, tito ( <i>title</i> )
<i>university</i>	pamantasan
<i>unripe</i>	hilaw
<i>us</i>	namin ( <i>excl. NG pronoun</i> ), natin ( <i>incl. NG pronoun</i> ), amin ( <i>excl. SA pronoun</i> ), atin ( <i>incl. SA pronoun</i> )
<i>use</i>	( <i>root</i> gamit) gamitin ( <i>v.</i> ), gumamit ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>used</i>	gamit
<i>used to, got</i>	( <i>root</i> sanay) nasanay ( <i>v.</i> )

## V

<i>vacation</i>	bakasyon
<i>vegetable</i>	gulay
<i>very much</i>	ng husto
<i>viand</i>	ulam
<i>view</i>	nood
<i>visit</i>	dalaw
<i>visitor</i>	bisita
<i>volcano</i>	bulkan

## W

<i>wait</i>	maghintay ka (v.), teka (v.)
<i>wake up</i>	(root gising) gumising (v.), gumigising (waking up), magpagising (have someone wake you up), kagigising (have just woken up)
<i>walk</i>	(root lakad) lumakad (v.), maglakad (v.)
<i>walk around</i>	(root ikot) magikot-ikot (v.)
<i>want</i>	gusto (modal); Gusto mo/ninyo ng . . . ? (Do you want . . . ?)
<i>wash (clothes)</i>	(root laba) maglaba (v.)
<i>wash (one's) face</i>	(root hilamos) maghilamos (v.)
<i>watch</i>	(root nood) manood (v.), manonood (v. future); relo (n.)
<i>water</i>	tubig
<i>wavy</i>	maalon
<i>we</i>	kami (excl. ANG pronoun), tayo (incl. ANG pronoun)
<i>weak</i>	mahina
<i>weather</i>	panahon
<i>wedding</i>	kasal
<i>Wednesday</i>	Miyerkoles
<i>week</i>	linggo
<i>west</i>	kanluran
<i>what</i>	ano
<i>what place in a sequence</i>	pang-ilan (question word)
<i>where</i>	saan, nasaan (question word to ask location)
<i>which</i>	alin (question word)
<i>while</i>	habang
<i>white</i>	puti

<i>who</i>	sino ( <i>question word</i> )
<i>why</i>	bakit ( <i>question word</i> )
<i>wind</i>	hangin
<i>windy</i>	mahangin
<i>winter</i>	taglamig
<i>with</i>	kasama
<i>woman</i>	babae
<i>women's</i>	na pangbabae
<i>word</i>	salita
<i>work</i>	trabaho, pasok
<i>worker</i>	manggagawa
<i>worth it</i>	sulit
<i>wound</i>	sugat
<i>wow</i>	aba
<i>write</i>	( <i>root sulat</i> ) magsulat ( <i>v.</i> ), sumulat ( <i>v.</i> )
<i>writing</i>	sulat, pagsulat ( <i>n.</i> )

## X

<i>x-ray</i>	eksray ( <i>n.</i> ); i-eksray ( <i>v.</i> )
--------------	--

## Y

<i>year</i>	taon
<i>yellow</i>	dilaw
<i>yes</i>	oho ( <i>fmL.</i> ), opo ( <i>fmL.</i> ), oo ( <i>infmL.</i> )
<i>yesterday</i>	kahapon
<i>yet</i>	pa
<i>you</i>	ikaw ( <i>ANG pronoun</i> ), ka ( <i>ANG pronoun</i> ), kayo ( <i>fmL. sing., infmL./fmL. pl. ANG pronoun</i> ), sila ( <i>fmL. pl. ANG pronoun</i> ), mo ( <i>sing. NG pronoun</i> ), inyo ( <i>pl. SA pronoun</i> ), iyo ( <i>sing. SA pronoun</i> )

<i>You may want to . . .</i>	Baka gusto mong . . .
<i>You're welcome.</i>	Walang anuman.
<i>young</i>	bata ( <i>adj.</i> )
<i>youngest child</i>	bunso
<i>your</i>	mo ( <i>sing. NG pronoun</i> ), ninyo ( <i>fmnl. NG pronoun</i> ), inyo ( <i>pl. SA pronoun</i> ), iyo ( <i>sing. SA pronoun</i> )
<i>yours</i>	sa inyo ( <i>pl.</i> ), sa iyo ('yo) ( <i>sing.</i> )